

# SOCIAL SCIENCE

(For Class-7)

## Geography

### Writer

Surjeet Kaur Gill/Sandhu

**Vetter :** Raminderjit Singh Wasu

Subject Expert (Geog.)

Punjab School Education Board

### History

### Vetter

Seema Chawla

Subject Expert (History)

Punjab School Education Board

### Civics

### Writer

Kanwaljit Kaur Sekhon/Hundal

**Vetter : Sukhbir Singh**

Subject Expert (Pol. Sc.)

Punjab School Education Board

### Artist

Gurmail Singh



**Punjab School Education Board**

**Sahibzada Ajit Singh Nagar**

© Punjab Government

**Edition : 2017 ..... 27,000 Copies**

All rights, including those of translation,  
reproduction and annotation etc., are reserved by  
the Punjab Government

**WARNING**

1. The Agency-holders shall not add any extra binding with a view to charge extra money for the binding. (Ref. Cl. No.7 of agreement with Agency-holders).
2. Printing, Publishing, Stocking, Holding or Selling etc., of spurious Text-books qua text-books printed and published by the Punjab School Education Board is a cognizable offence under Indian Penal Code.  
(The textbooks of the Punjab School Education Board are printed on paper carrying water mark of the Board.)

**Price : ₹**

---

**Published by : Secretary,** Punjab School Education Board, Vidya Bhawan, Phase-8,  
Sahibzada Ajit Singh Nagar-160062 & Printed by M/s Modest Printers, Jalandhar.



## **PREFACE**

Punjab School Education Board has been striving hard to prepare new syllabi and textbooks according to the new education policy. In order to bring the students of Punjab at par with the national level, this book of Social Science is based upon the recommendation of the Department of Human Resource Development (NCF 2005) Govt. of India. In the light of guidelines given in PCF-2013, the content of this book has been revised made subjective, more vibrant and student centric keeping in mind state specific needs. The mental level of the students have been kept in mind while discussing the contents i.e. Our Environment, Our Past and Democracy and Equality in this book.

The book in hand has been prepared for the students of class VII. India and world is the main theme of the book. To achieve this objective, it has been divided into three units, i.e. Unit - I : Our Environment; includes the study of natural and human environment along with its interaction. The outcome of the study includes case studies of some of the natural regions. In Unit - II : Our Past; includes the study of understanding and importance of human life in the past and Unit - III Democracy and Equality; includes the understanding of the facts regarding the institutions, their equality and the economic development of our democratic State.

This book has been written by the subject experts/project officers working in the Academic & Planning branch of Punjab School Education Board. To make the book more interesting, the designs and maps have been prepared by the artists of the board. Every effort has been made to achieve the objectives laid down for this book.

Suggestions from the field for the improvement of this text book are welcome.

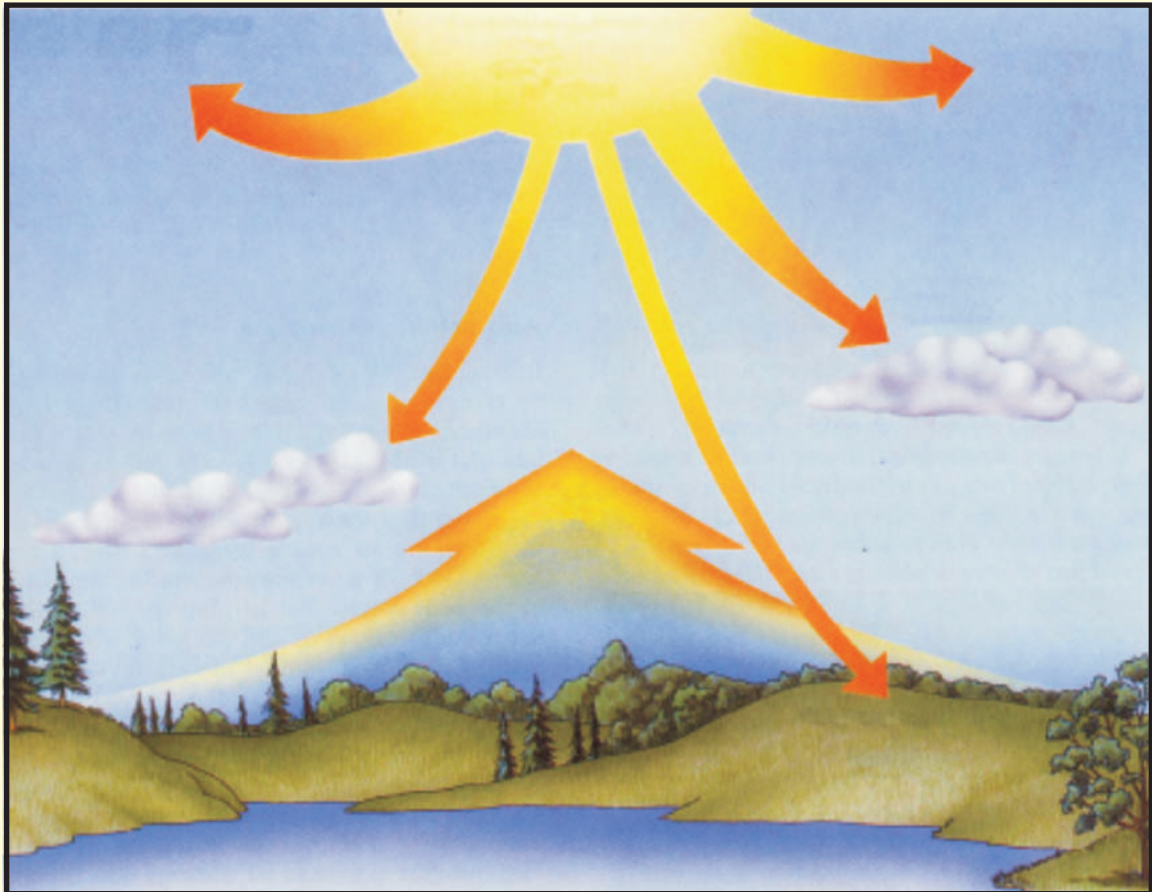
**Chairperson**

Punjab School Education Board

<b>Contents</b>		
<b>Sr. No.</b>	<b>Lesson</b>	<b>Page</b>
<b>Unit-I - Geography - Our Environment</b>		
1.	Environment	3
2.	Internal and External face of the Earth	9
3.	The Changing face of the Earth and Land forms	23
4.	Atmosphere and Temperature	38
5.	Atmospheric pressure and winds	48
6.	Ocean	63
7.	Natural Vegetation and Wild Life	78
8.	Human Environment - Settlements, Means of Transport and Communication	88
9.	Inter-Relationship of Man and Environment	95
<b>Unit-II - History - Our Pasts - II</b>		
10.	The Medieval India	111
11.	New Kings and Kingdoms (A.D. 700 - 1200)	119
12.	Political Developments in South India (A.D. 700 - 1200)	128
13.	The Delhi Sultanate	136
14.	The Creation of an Empire - The Mughal Empire	153
15.	Monumental Architecture	167
16.	Towns, Traders and Craftsman	181
17.	Social Changes - Mobile and settled Communities	188
18.	Religious Developments	195
19.	The Development of Regional Cultures	210
20.	India in the Eighteenth Century	218
<b>Unit-III - Civics - Democracy and Equality</b>		
21.	Democracy and Equality	233
22.	Democracy - Representative Institutions	242
23.	State-Government	252
24.	Media and Democracy	265
25.	Gender - Inequality	275
26.	Role of Market/Bazaar	284

## Unit - I Geography

### Our Environment



## **Our Environment**

In this part of the book, the study of environment on the whole i.e. the natural and human environment has been included according to the mental level of the students. Four spheres of environment namely, Lithosphere, Hydrosphere, Atmosphere and Biosphere have been discussed in this part.

Under the study of Lithosphere, the internal and external part of the earth has been explained. While discussing the internal part of the earth, internal layers and movement of the earth has been discussed. The endogenic forces due to which earthquake and tsunami occur, have also been discussed in brief. The external forces pertaining to the changing face of the earth have also been discussed. As a result of these, landforms like mountains, plateaus, lakes and planes have been formed on the earth.

Study of Hydrosphere includes knowledge about the oceans of the world and ocean currents with their effects. Similarly the study of Atmosphere includes the knowledge about its layers and elements of climate. It also includes the knowledge about different climatic zones, which are the result of variation in elements of climate. The environmental pollution problems have also been discussed so that the students may get awakened accordingly.

While discussing fourth sphere, the Biosphere which is due to the interaction of other three spheres, the study of different types of vegetation and wild life of the world on the bases of land and climate on the earth has been made. The students have been enlightened about the need of conservation and preservation of wild life and natural vegetation through this section.

The human environment includes the brief study of development of human settlements, means of transport and communication in India and the world as well.

A study of some of the natural regions which have been evolved by the interaction of natural and human environment has also been included.

**Subject Expert (Geography)**



Environment means the surroundings and the countless natural forces causing a variety of phenomena on the earth surface, due to which there is a variation in the environment of each place. Thus the relationship of man with his surroundings is not the same everywhere. It is due to the difference of relief, temperature and rainfall that there is difference in vegetation and agriculture. All these factors affect human occupations. The form of earth's surface determines human response. People living on the main land pursue agriculture, grazing or lumbering while people living near the sea and on island engage in fishing. On the basis of land, water and climate, a particular type of living kingdom of fauna (living beings) and flora takes shape. Like human beings, plants and animals are also products of their surroundings. Whole of this specturum & process is called **Habitat**.

Although the areas near the equator are known for their dense forests. While there is only grass in the interiors of dry regions. The polar areas of the earth which remain covered with snow throughout the year, are devoid of population and forests. It is the land, water, air and solar energy that help to grow a variety of living organisms. Life is possible only there, where all these agents interact with each other. This interacting sphere is known as '**Biosphere**'. The Biosphere and the physical surroundings of the place collectively are called, 'Ecology'.

### **The Changing Environment**

The environment has always been changing on the surface of the Earth. Because of the change in the elements of environment, these changes occur both slowly as well as suddenly. The slow changes occur through degradation process of the earth i.e. through the erosional agents lake, river, glacier, wind, ocean, weathering etc. The sudden or abrupt



changes occur through the upheaval, result in folding and faulting of the earth surface. Similarly the earth has also been changed from gaseous to molten state. After cooling it has changed into solid form. This change occurred very slowly. The gaseous element formed as atmosphere, water elements are denoted by oceans and solid element formed as Lithosphere.

Human beings have also brought a big change on the surface of the earth by cutting trees and developing it for his own needs such as cities etc. By mounding the rivers and digging the canals, water is being utilized for irrigational purposes. In this way the deserts have been changed into green lands. By doing so ecology of the place has been changed altogether. Now, the Thar desert of India is no more a dry barren land. Same level of change happened in the other river valleys of the world, like in Indus Valley, Nile valley, Hwang-He-Valley and so on. Man has also brought changes on the earth surface by exploiting minerals and developing industries. It shows that there is great relation between physical and human elements. The existing civilization is the result of systematic & continuous co-ordination of the physical and human elements.

**Elements of environment :** To understand total environment, there is need to have more knowledge about three spheres of the earth i.e. **Atmosphere, Lithosphere** and **Hydrosphere**. We will study about these three spheres in detail in further lessons of the book. You have already studied in brief about these spheres in the previous class.

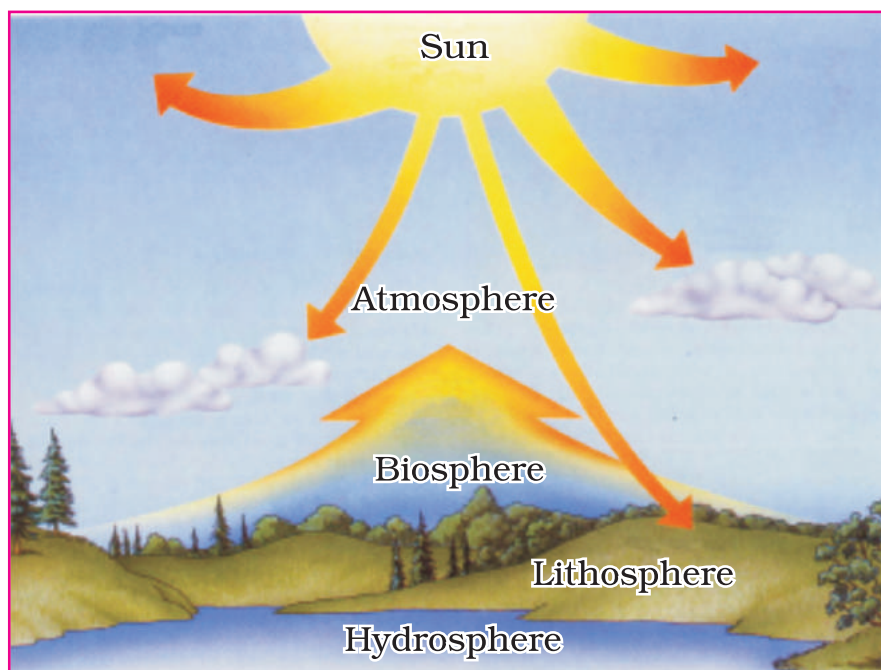
### Major Spheres of the Environment

**Atmosphere :** The earth is enclosed (surrounded) by air and this airy cover is called Atmosphere. Every planet except mercury and satellites of the solar system, are enclosed by the cover of air. Although this air cover extends upto 1600km around the earth still 99% of the air is upto 32 km height only. On the earth's surface air, land and water are collectively responsible for creating and maintaining life of plants and animals. The temperature, humidity atmospheric pressure and other components of atmosphere affect the physical environment of the earth. Out of the elements of environment, the atmosphere experiences maximum changes.

**Lithosphere :** The surface of the earth is covered both by water and land. Water covers about 71% and land covers about 29% of the earth surface. Two third of the total land area lies in Northern Hemisphere.

The Earth's exterior thickness is approximately 80-100 km. This solid thickness of the earth's crust is not uniform every where. It is more on the land masses and less below the ocean beds. The crust of the earth is made up of different types of rocks. The earth as a whole towards its interior consists of three shells. Lithosphere, Mantle and the Core. The uppermost layer or shell is called SIAL because it mainly consists of Silicon and Aluminium and known as ; SIAL (SI+AL), where SI stands for Silicon and AL for Aluminium, that is why it is called as SIAL. The second layer is called SIMA, it consists of Silicon and Magnesium, SIMA (SI+MA), while SI for Silicon and MA for Magnesium. The third and the inner most layer is called NiFe, which consists of Nickel and Ferrous i.e. NiFe (Ni + Fe) where Ni is for Nickel, Fe is for Ferrous (iron elements). This inner most layer is in viscous form of the above metals.

**Hydrosphere :** The water covered region on the surface of earth is called Hydrosphere. It covers vast areas in the form of oceans, bays, gulfs and seas. The earth is called watery planet because 71% of the earth is covered with water. There are water bodies i.e. five oceans, numerous seas, rivers and lakes on the earth. The water areas are the deep areas that have been caused due to numerous forces acting on the

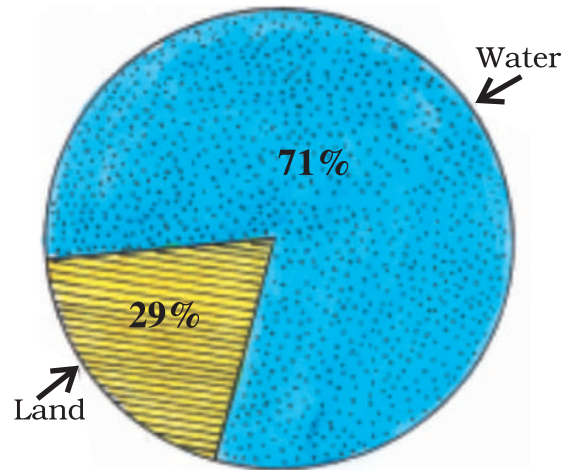


**Design 1.1** The spheres of environment

surface of the earth. As the relief of the earth goes on rising above the sea level, similarly does the depth of oceans, from the coast to the interior of the oceans.

The oceans affect mostly from the climate point of view. These are the sources of water, after heating the water turns into the clouds which rain afterwards. The wind blowing over the oceans make a moderate type of climate of the place where they

blow. Ocean currents and tides affect the adjoining areas. These also affect the shipping and trade. Therefore, greater attention should be given to the oceans.



**Design 1.2** Distribution of water and land on the earth

**Biosphere :** The sphere on the earth where collective effect of physical elements may be seen the maximum, is known as Biosphere. This sphere is the result of interaction of three spheres (Hydrosphere, Lithosphere and Atmosphere). There are different species of the plants and the animals which are known as **Animal Kingdom**.

**Biosphere :** It is the result of the collective effect of the atmosphere, Lithosphere and Hydrosphere.

**Animal Kingdom :** Various types of the species of plants and animals of the Biosphere is known as 'Animal Kingdom'.

**Human Environment :** The present landscape of the earth is not only due to natural forces of the earth but also due to the man's thought. With the technological development, man has made changes in the physical environment according to his need. Mankind has passed through four stages of its development. It means that primarily man was involved in hunting practices only. Afterwards it started animal rearing, then got into agricultural & mining practices. Nowadays man has involved itself in to industry and trade practices.

By clearing the dense equitorial type of forest, man has planted rubber producing trees, with the development of means of transportation,



agricultural products like Potato, Maize, Cotton, Sugarcane, Tea, Coffee are being cultivated and traded even to far off areas. Now the world is known as a 'Global Market'. It means if the production of any item is in plenty at one place, the consumer market can be established at that place easily. Similarly, with the import of good seeds and breeds, improvements have been made in quality of various products.

Man had made tunnels across the mountains, shipping through man made canals namely Panama & Suez, diverting the river water for irrigational purposes, exploiting the minerals, and establishing the industrial centres are examples which show that to some extent, man has controlled the natural forces of the earth according to his own requirements. Such attempts have made the world Global Village. It means, man has got skills developed to use resources according to his needs.

### Points to Remember

1. Environment means surroundings of the Earth which includes constituents of relief and weather.
2. Constituents of Environment may be divided in four spheres i.e. Atmosphere, Lithosphere, Hydrosphere and Biosphere.
3. The world is looked upon as 'Global Village' as man has collectively moulded natural power to its service.



### I. Give answer to the following questions approximately in 1-15 words

- i. What do you understand by environment ?
- ii. How many types of environment are there ? Give brief account.
- iii. By which name we call the sphere, that is product of interaction of three spheres, write in brief.
- iv. Which are the main spheres of environment ?
- v. What do you mean by the changing environment ?
- vi. How do man affects environment ?
- vii. Write down the names of layers of the earth.

## II. Fill in the blanks

- i. Environment has been divided in \_\_\_\_\_ spheres.
- ii. The SIAL layer of the earth is made up of the material which is rich in \_\_\_\_\_ and \_\_\_\_\_.
- iii. NiFe is made up of the material which is rich in \_\_\_\_\_ and \_\_\_\_\_ elements.
- iv. The different types of species of animals is known as \_\_\_\_\_.
- v. \_\_\_\_\_ portion of Earth has been covered by hydrosphere.



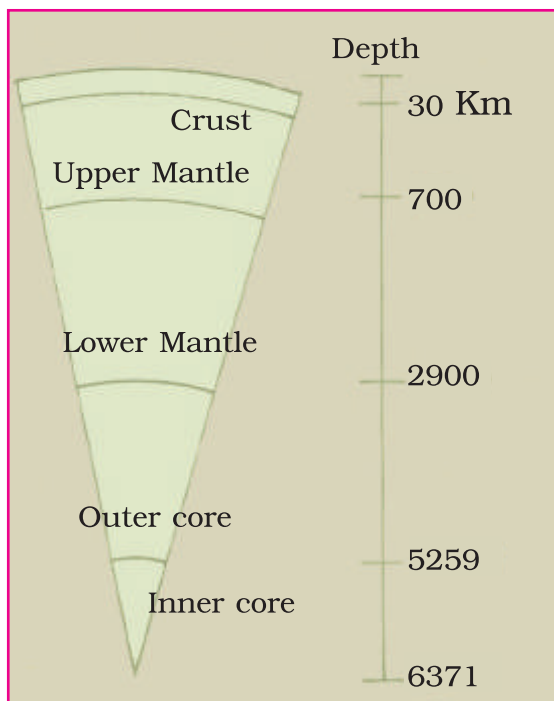
Make a list of factors which has effect over environment.



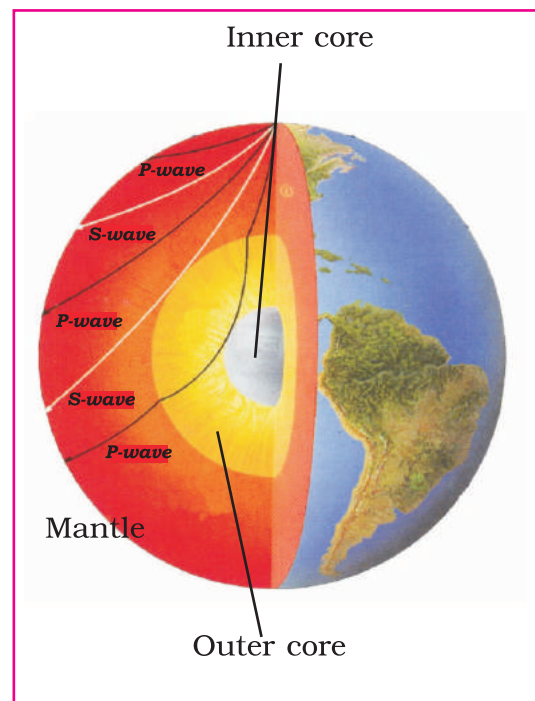


We have studied the earth as a member of the solar system in the previous class and have seen photographs of earth taken from the space. We already have some knowledge about the movements of the earth which tell us how the night changes to a day, summer changes to winter season etc. In this lesson we shall study about the surface of the earth and its interior part that bears so many minerals.

First of all, we will study about the interior of the earth. As we have studied in the previous chapter, that earth is made up of three shells, Lithosphere, mantle and inner most part. These are usually called as SIAL, SIMA, & NiFe Layers.



**Design 2.1** The internal parts of the Earth



**Design 2.2** A view of the internal parts of the Earth

**Lithosphere :** It is the rigid part of the earth's crust that is called as SIAL. The thickness of this part is about 100 km. This Layer contains mainly the elements, like, Silicon and Aluminium. That is why this layer is known as SIAL. SIAL means the synthesis of (SIAL) SI=Silicon, AL=Aluminium. The thickness of the earth's crust over ocean is 4 to 7 km. On the continent part of the earth, thickness is 35 km while On the mountains this layer is 70 kilometers thick. This is the upper most layer of the earth and consists of rocks and soil.

**Mantle :** Below the upper layers of earth is Mantle. The average thickness of this is 2900 km. It means it is 2900 km deep into the earth. The thickness of this Layer is not the same at all the places. This is again divided into two parts. The upper Mantle and the lower Mantle. The upper Mantle is 100 km deep into the earth. The Mantle is also known as SIMA. This layer of the earth is mainly made up of Silicon and Magnesium, that is why it is called SIMA. For example, SIMA is synthesis of two words, Silicon and Magnesium SIMA, where SI stands for Silicon while MA stands for Magnesium. Therefore, SI+MA=SIMA.

**The Core :** The innermost part of the earth is called 'Core'. The thickness of this part is approximately upto 3470 km. This is also divided into two sub parts i.e. Outer core, and Inner core. The core known as NiFe, mainly consists of two elements Nickel & Ferrous. As the NiFe is the synthesis of two words, Nickle & Ferrous. While Ni stands for Nickle and Fe stands for Ferrous. These elements are in molten and viscous state.

When we go deep into the Earth, the temperatures of the inner layers more than upper layers. Due to this heat of the Earth's surface earth ruptures and rifts. Through this ruptured surface, the molten material from the inner side of the earth, comes out in the form of lava. When this happens on the ocean shelves, a new layer is formed after cooling. But when it erupts on the surface of the earth it transforms into mountains. Fujiyama mountains of Japan are the specific example of such volcanic eruption.

The Earth's crust is made up of different types of rocks and minerals :  
Let us understand the rocks.

**Classification of rocks :** There are different types of rocks. These are classified on the bases of several parameters.



**Design 2.3 :** Fujiyama Mountain (Japan)

- I. On the basis of the porosity, these are of two types.
  - A. Porous Rocks - excess of sand particles.
  - B. Non Porous Rocks - excess of clayey particles.
- II. On the basis of the penetrability of water.
  - A. Permeable Rocks : from where the water can easily pass.
  - B. Impermeable Rocks : Does not allow water to pass.
- III. On the basis of the chemical formation of rocks:
  - A. Alkaline Rocks
  - B. Acidic Rocks

The most important and conventional classification of rocks is on the basis of their formation.

- IV. On the basis of their formation, these are of three types.
  - A. Igneous Rocks
  - B. Sedimentary Rocks
  - C. Metamorphic Rocks

**A. Igneous rocks :** 'Igneous' means fire in Latin Language. The Igneous implies the highest temperature and such rocks are formed out of the cooling of the hot and liquid material from the interior of the Earth. The hot liquid is called as '**Magma**'. These rocks are of two types.

- a. Intrusive Igneous rocks.
- b. Extrusive Igneous Rocks.

- a. Intrusive Igneous rocks.** Rocks formed by the cooling of the Magma, in the interior of the earth are called as Intrusive Rocks. Intrusive Rocks are of two types:
- i. Plutonic Igneous Rocks
  - ii. Hypabyssal Igneous Rocks
- i. Plutonic Igneous Rocks :** The igneous rocks formed due to cooling of the hot magma into hard solid slowly in the deep interior of the earth. Granite and Gabro are the specific examples of these rocks. The plateau of Ranchi and rocks of Singhbhum are made up of Granite rocks.
- ii. Hypabyssal Igneous Rocks :** Sometimes the internal magma does not come out on the surface but solidify in the cracks only after cooling. The rocks thus formed are known as Hypabyssal Igneous Rocks. i.e. Dike, Silt, Dolerite.
- b. Extrusive Igneous Rocks :** Where there is large amount of internal magma accumulated, it starts gushing out of the soft surface. This magma starts cooling on the surface of the earth. The rocks formed in such a way are called as Extrusive Igneous rocks. **Deccan Plateau** is made out of these volcanic rocks.

All the igneous rocks are found in crystalline form and do not have layers. These rocks are called primary because these are initial rocks which formed the Earth. Containing no remains of vegetation or living organisms, these igneous rocks cover 2/3 part of the Earth's crust.

**B. Sedimentary rocks :** Sedimentary rocks are formed by the hardening of the layers of the matter brought by agents of denudation (like water, air and river etc.). This matter when deposited, in the low lands as sediments turns into rocks. Such deposits occur at low level on the floor of the oceans, lakes and rivers along the continents. The process of deposition continues for millions of years to constitute into rocks. As a result of mechanical or chemical action, it assumes the forms of sedimentary rocks.



**c. Metamorphic Rocks :** The word metamorphic is made up of the greek rooted word 'Meta', meaning change and 'marph' meaning form. Therefore this category of rocks include those rocks which have been transformed. As consequence of the effect of temperature or pressure or both the igneous rocks as well as sedimentary rocks undergo a change in their form, structure, hardness and other traits. Rocks so transformed are known as metamorphic rocks.

Some of the examples of metamorphic rocks are given below :

<b>Original Igneous rock</b>	<b>Metamorphic rock</b>
1 Mica	Schist
2 Granite	Gneiss
3 Bituminous coal	Anthracite coal
4 Gabbro	Serpentine

<b>Original Sedimentary Rocks</b>	<b>Metamorphic Rocks</b>
1 Sand Stone	Quartzite
2 Lime stone	Marble
3 Shale	Slate
4 Slate	Phyllite
5 Peat	Coal

Metamorphic rocks transformed from igneous rocks, have the characteristics similar to those of igneous rocks and those transformed from sedimentary rocks resemble the latter.

The upper most Layer of the earth's surface is made up of the rock material which is known as soil. Let us study soils.

**Soil :** Soil is a very important land resource, its significance lies in its fertility. Infertile soil is not a much use while fertile soil has always been more important, because of requirements met by it. Human beings have

always been keen to live in fertile plains, since their origin. Ancient civilizations have also developed in fertile river valleys only. Can you name some river valley related to such ancient civilization ? The fertile soils of Indus, Nile, Tigris, Euphrates and Yangste, valleys led to the development of the civilizations. Even today high density of population is found in fertile river valleys and plains. It is because of its fertile soil that India has been able to produce food for its huge population.

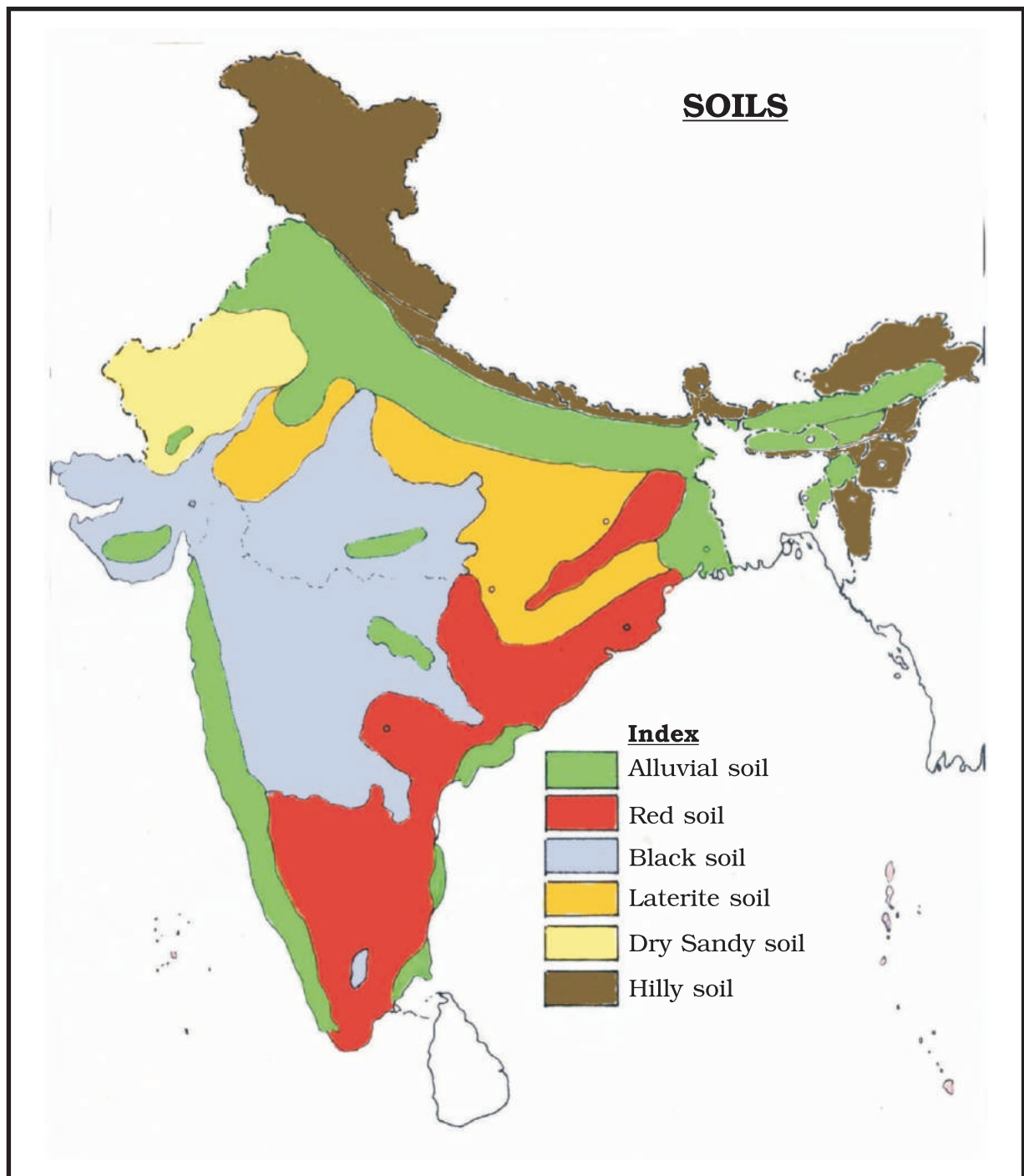
**Formation of soil :** According to its definition, soil is that upper part of the surface which is formed as a result of the disintegration of rocks. Soil particles are fine, soft and disintegrated so that roots of the plants could spread easily. Soil is formed by physical, chemical and organic actions and changes. The soil formation process is slow and it may take thousands of years to form a thick upper layer suitable for cultivation. Besides rock material of the plants and animal wastes add to the fertility of the soil. This soil consist of two types of matter - one mineral matter and other is humus. Soil includes a number of minerals, which it obtains from the parent rock. Decayed organic matter is called humus.

**Types of Soils :** A variety of soil types is found in the world. Types of soil can be classified on a number of bases. Main classifications are made on the bases of their origin, texture and climate. Actually these are the elements that help in the formation of soil and its fertility. The parent rock from which the soil has been formed, transfers its characteristics to the soil.

Rivers, glaciers and winds also play an important role in the soil formation. Rivers, besides being an important source of water, play an important role in the soil formation also. World's fertile alluvial soil is found, in the rivers valleys and deltas of rivers which is a great resource for any country. This soil provides food for the major part of the world population.

You know with the change in climate, vegetation changes and vegetation type also affect the type of soils. Variation of humus as a result of change in climate is reflected in the texture of soil. On this basis main soil types are Tundra Soil, which remains under snow for most of the time. Podzol Soil of cold and humid area Chernozem or Black Soil of temperate dry lands, Desert soil of dry Sandy areas, brown forest soil of





**Design 2.4** Soil in India

deciduous forest area, tropical red Soil etc. Black soil is very fertile. If water is made available in the desert areas, soil proves quite fertile in such areas. As a result of the provision of canal water in the Ganga Nagar area of Rajasthan, this desert land has become one of the fertile tracts of our country.

The land or soil has been an important source in Steppee of Eurasia, Prairies of North America and Pampas of Argentina, since they adopted mechanization of farming at a large scale. The vast grass lands are no more far cattle grazing ground but nowadays food grain Bowl of the world.

The following are the types of soils found in India :

### Soils of India

1. **Alluvial Soil :** Alluvial is formed due to the deposition of soil, carried out by rivers. This is one of the most fertile soil found on Earth. This soil is also called as deltaic soil, because it is mainly found in the delta regions of the rivers of northern plain. The soil spread over about 55% of such areas is renewed every year. The soil formed by the relatively new set of the delta regions of the Ganga or the relative new soil deposited in plains by rivers in flood is known as Khadar while the relatively older or silt which the rivers transport from the upper areas of valleys is known as Bangar.
2. **Black Soil :** This is also called 'Regur'. The dark brown soil formed from volcanic rocks or the black soil consisting of fine particles, preserve moisture for a long time. Being useful for the cultivation of cotton, this is also known as cotton soil. It is found in hot dry areas like Maharashtra, Madhya Pradesh, Gujrat & Tamilnadu.
3. **Red Soil :** Formed from igneous rocks, this soil is found in the hot and relatively hot areas of the eastern and southern parts of the Peninsula. Owing to the excess of iron oxide, it has red colour. Although less fertile, it yields good produce with the help of chemical fertilizers.
4. **Laterite Soil :** This soil is found in hot and moist regions with a heavy seasonal rainfall on account of heavy rainfall and high temperature, the upper fertile layer of the soil gets dissolved and sinks down into the earth. This phenomenon is known as leaching owing to excess of iron oxide, this soil too has red colour. This soil is

unsuitable for cultivation, but is useful in house building purpose. It is found in the western ghat, Plateau of Chhota Nagpur and some parts of the eastern states.

5. **Dry Sandy Soil :** Found in the desert areas of Rajasthan and Gujrat, this soil is also known as desert soil. The quantity of the humus in the soil being less, it is not useful for cultivation.
6. **Hilly Soil :** Rich in the element of iron this soil is found mainly in the Himalyas. This is less deep and has a thin Layer. Tea is cultivated in such soil and at places where there is enough rainfall.

**Soil Erosion :** Soil Erosion is not only a problem in India, but it is so at global level. Non scientific cultivation, continuous cutting of trees, overgrazing of animal are some of the causes resulting in soil erosion. The rate of the soil erosion in India is amongst highest. Therefore, there is an essential need of conservation of soil. To save soil from further depletion, planting new trees, adopting better agricultural practices, checking over grazing etc. are some of the ways.

**Minerals :** We have studied the forces related with the origin and types of rocks. The material forming rocks is known as minerals. Minerals are yardstick of economic condition of a country.

Minerals are classified in three categories.

1. **Metallic Minerals :** The minerals that contain the metal contents i.e. Iron, Copper, Tin, Aluminum, Gold, Silver etc.
2. **Non-Metallic Minerals :** The minerals that do not contain the metal contents i.e. Sulphur, Mica, Gypsum, Phosphate, Potash etc.
3. **Energy-Minerals :** The minerals that produce fuel and energy. It means the minerals that are used in thermal plants, industries, vehicles etc. are called Energy Minerals. These include Coal, Petroleum, Natural gas and Electricity etc.

**Iron :** Iron is used in a smallest nail to the largest ships. The manufacturing of whole of the industrial machinery, vehicles, rails, machinery for agriculture, all is based on this mineral. Iron & Steel has brought a revolution in the industrial sector.

Iron deposits are found in approximately all the continents. In India it is mainly found in Orissa, Bihar, Madhya Pradesh, Chhattisgarh, Karnataka and Goa.

**Copper :** Copper is the first metal known in the human history. Copper comes next to the iron from industrial point of view. The metal era started with the use of copper, as utensils of different types are made out of copper. The importance of copper has increased nowadays. Being good conductor of heat, this is used in making electric appliances. Besides, cable wires, it is used in telephone, railway engines, aeroplanes and watches etc.

In Chile (South America) the production of copper is the highest in the world and United States of America stands second. Many copper producing regions lie in Africa while India, Japan, Australia also produce copper. In India, the deposits of copper are found in the states of Jharkhand, Madhya Pradesh, Andhra Pradesh and Rajasthan.

**Bauxite :** Aluminium is extracted from bauxite. Aluminium is a light weight metal which is mainly used in manufacturing of aeroplanes. Besides, it is used in manufacturing rails, motors, buses, cars and making electric wires. The goods made out of this metal are used for a long time because it is a rust free metal. Utensils are also made of this metal.

The extraction of bauxite is highest in Australia in the world. In India, bauxite is extracted in Maharashtra, Madhya Pradesh, Chhattisgarh and Jharkhand.

**Manganese :** Manganese is also an important mineral. It is mainly used in making steel from the iron ore. It is also used in making bleaching powder, pesticides, paint and mirrors.

The manganese deposits are found in Kazakhstan, Russia, Ukraine and Georgia. Besides these countries, South Africa, Brazil and India are the main producers of the manganese. In India, Madhya Pradesh, the production of manganese is highest. Manganese is found in the states of Andhra Pradesh, Karnataka, Orissa and Jharkhand also.

**Mica :** Mica is a non-metallic mineral. It is also very useful mineral that is why it is also of great importance. This mineral is used in making electric goods. It is also used in making lamps, chimneys, paints, radars, rubber, paper, aeroplanes, transparent sheets.

There are big deposits of fine mica in India. From this point of view India stands first in the world.

The main regions producing mica in India are; Jharkhand, Bihar, Andhra Pradesh, and Rajasthan. India exports mica in a large amount and earns foreign exchange. Besides India, Russia, United States of America, Brazil, Argentina, Canada are also mica producers.

**Mineral fuel :** Mineral fuels like, coal, mineral oil and natural gas, are found in abundance in the interior of the earth. Now a days the importance of mineral fuel has been increasing. Mineral fuel is used in almost every industry. Besides this, it is also used in homes, hotels, shops and means of transportation. The countries which have scarcity of this resource or use this resource in small amount lag behind on the development front.

**Coal :** Coal is also a major mineral fuel. The coal is not directly in much use now and is rather being used for producing thermal electricity. It is easy to transport electricity through wires from the place of production to the other places. For the purpose of thermal power, Lignite and Peat types of coal are used. The submergence of forests in deep layers of the crust in the long past and a result of heat and pressure of the upper layers has produced coal.

The coal reserves of world are mainly found in the areas between 35° to 65° latitudes. Around 90% of the coal of the world is explored in China, United States of America, Russia and European countries. Besides Southern America, Africa, North America and the continent of Asia also have large reserves of coal. Coal is found in Japan and Thailand also. India produces 5% of the coal of the world. Damoder valley is a main coal producing area of India. Besides, West Bengal and Madhya Pradesh states also have coal mines.



**Mineral oil :** It is known as Petroleum and also as mineral oil because it is extracted from the Earth.

**Locomotive Energy :** The energy by which locomotives move.

For its use at large scale and importance, it is also known as **liquid Gold**. Word petroleum is synthesis of two words 'Petro and Oleum'. In latin language 'Petra' means rock and 'Oleum' means oil. Therefore the literal meaning of oil extracted from rocks is petroleum. It is made out of the vegetation and animals trapped between layers of sedimentary rocks.

The petrol or diesel is not obtained in the same form from the earth, which we get from petrol pumps. It is obtained in an unrefined state. known as crude oil. Crude oil is refined in the refineries and converted into utility goods i.e. Petrol, diesel, kerosene oil, mobil oil, grease, wax, vaseline etc.

The largest oil reserves of the world is in South West Asia. In this area, include the Saudi Arabia, Iran, Iraq, Kuwait, UAE (United Arab Emirates) in which seven emirates Abu Dhabi, Dubai, Sharjah, Ajmer, Fuzera, Umar-Al-Quain and Russalkhema are included.

#### Points to Remember

1. Upper most layer of earth is known as crust which is made of Aluminium and Silicon primarily.
2. Central layer of earth is made of Silicon and Magnesium while inner most part is made of Nickel and iron particles.
3. Crust of the Earth consists of various rocks. Those rocks may be metamorphic, sedimentary or igneous.
4. Weathering of rocks provides us soil. Soils may be categorised according to their use and characteristics.
5. Minerals are wealth of any nation which are bases of development of any nation.



**I. Give answer to the following questions approximately in 1-15 words.**

- i. How many shells of the earth are there ? Name them.
- ii. How many types of Rocks are found on the earth.
- iii. Write down about the Mantle part of the earth.
- iv. Why the 'Sial' layer is known by this name ?
- v. By which name the inner most part of the earth called ? What are the components of this part ?
- vi. Write about the Mantle part of the earth.
- vii. How can we avoid soil erosion ?

**II. Give answer to the following questions approximately in 50-60 words.**

- i. What are igneous rocks ? How many types are there in these rocks ? Write about the Intrusive rocks.
- ii. What are the Sedimentary Rocks ? How many types are there of these rocks ?
- iii. Write about the Metamorphic Rocks, give specific example of these rocks.
- iv. Classify the minerals available in the earth's crust.
- v. In which category mica is classified, for what purpose is it used ?
- vi. Which mineral is called as 'Liquid Gold'. Give brief introduction.
- vii. Write down the importance of the soil on the earth.

**III. Write the answer to the following questions approximately in 125-130 words.**

- i. Write in detail about the rocks available on the earth.

- ii. What are minerals ? Which minerals are available on the earth ? Classify them and write about the metallic minerals.
- iii. What are mineral fuels ? Give details of any mineral fuel.
- iv. Write in detail about the soil available in India.



1. Make a model of the earth showing its layers.
2. Is soil erosion a serious problem ? Discuss it in your class.



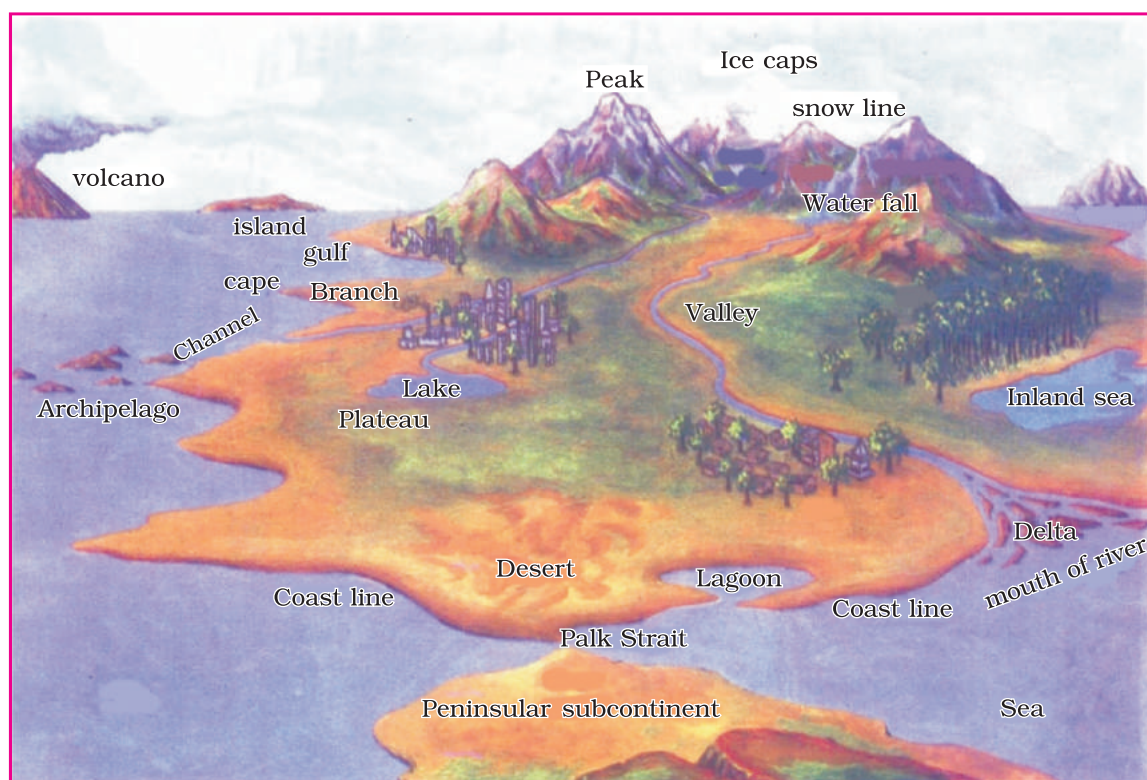




Earth has been undergoing a continuous change which is to go on forever. The forces acting at the earth surface bring change internally and externally as well. These forces work collectively and can be classified in two categories :

**1. Internal Forces :** The endogenic forces bring change in the earth surface through earth quake and volcanic activities.

**2. External Forces** work through weathering, running water, river and nullahs, underground water, wind, glaciers, ocean waves, animals and plants and are known as exogonic forces also.



**Design - 3.1** Land forms of the earth

**Internal forces :** These internal forces are called Tectonic forces also and act through folding and faulting. Our knowledge about the structures and physical conditions of the interior of the earth is inadequate. However their effect may be seen on the surface of the earth in the form of major land forms. While the endogenic forces give birth to broad relief at earth surface, Exogenic ones intend to smooth it. These two forces act on the earth's surface simultaneously, modifying its appearance and forming various landforms.

Since the origin of the earth, its surface has been experiencing changes at large scale. The relief features which we see today, never existed in the beginning when the earth's crust solidified from gaseous state. It means that there were no mountains, plains, plateaus or oceans and present land forms came into existence by the powerful forces operating from within the crust of the earth.

**Land forms on the earth :** According to the design no. 3.1 you will observe that the earth surface is not even every where. There are high mountains, plateaus, plains, seas, valleys, deserts etc. These different types of land forms are the result of internal/tectonic forces and external forces of the earth. Therefore the earth has been continuously changing. These changes occur on earth after long spans. It means some changes are due to very slow movements. It is very necessary to study these landforms as they also affect the human activities. These are mainly divided into three categories.

1. Mountains
2. Plateaus
3. Plains

**Mountains :** Approximately 26% of the earth surface is covered by mountains. These landforms have a height of 600 to 15000 mt. from the sea level. These are sloping to plains, sometimes make a sharp angle to the plane. There are different types of mountains on the earth and may be classified according to their origin, age, height, location and on the bases of their morphological activities. These classifications are :

- a. Fold Mountains
- b. Block Mountains
- c. Eroded or Dissected Mountains

On the basis of the action process, the forces which act under the crust of Earth can be divided into two following types :

- 1. Slow movements
- 2. Sudden movements

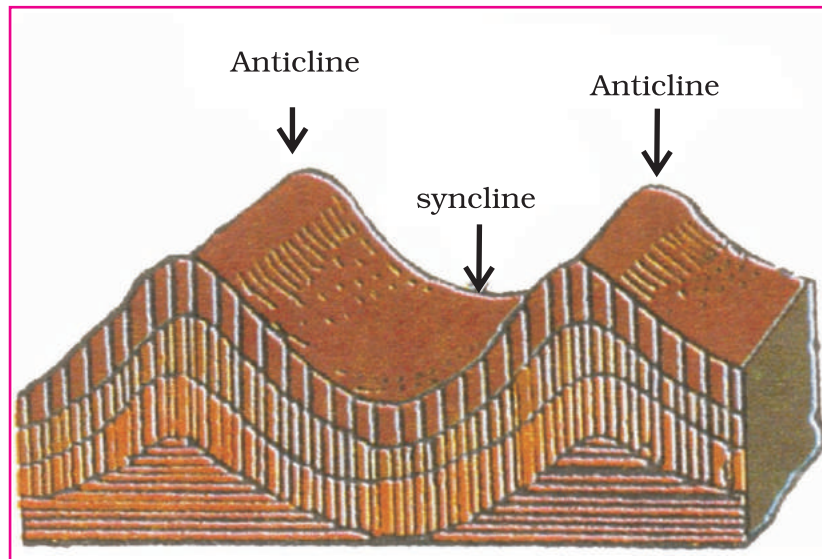
**Slow Movements :** Such movements take at quite long span of time to complete their action. Their effect may not be detected ever during whole of our life span. On the basis of their direction of operation these can be divided further into two types.

**(i) Vertical Movements :** The vertical movements are responsible for a rise or fall of a portion of the earth's crust, rise of earth's crust in relation to surrounding area is called uplift and the fall is called subsidence. The vertical earth movements on a large scale result in formation of plateaus on the continents. Hence they are called continent forming movements.

**(ii) Horizontal Movements :** The Horizontal movements are responsible for folding and faulting and disturbing the horizontal arrangement of the layers of rocks. In the process both the forces of compression as well as tension are involved. The compression lead the sediment into folds.

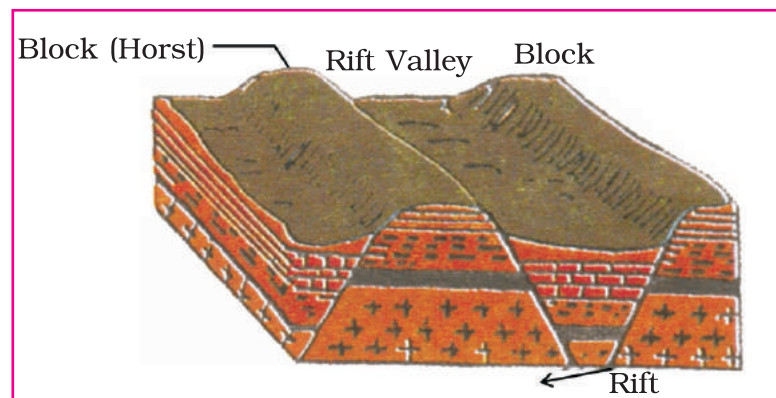
The upward rises are called as **Anticlines** (up fold) and the areas that subsidises (lower fold) are called as **syncline**. This is similarly as shown in the design 3.2.

Due to the horizontal force of tension, the earth crust displaced along the fault line. The land between the two parallel faults either rises or subsides. The uplift portion is called Horst or **Block mountain** and depression is termed as **rift valley**.



**Diagram 3.2** Fold Mountains

The Black forest of Germany and the vosges in France are the typical examples of Block Mountains. The rift valley in East Africa and Vindhya mountain in India are the typical examples of these. Rhine river of Europe and Narmada & Tapti rivers of India flow through rift valleys.



**Design 3.3** Block Mountain & Rift Valley

Large scale horizontal movements are responsible for mountains. Hence, they are called mountain forming movements.

### Importance of Mountains

Mountains have special importance for human life. They play a special role in determining the climate of a country. For example, the Himalayas



protect India against the extremely cold winds blowing from the North. As a result, the temperature of North India does not fall much below in winters where as in China region, falling in the same latitudes, the temperature falls much lower. Rivers originating from the mountains, supply water for irrigation and generation of electricity. Forests along the mountains are a source of wood used for building and of herbs. Several mountainous regions have mines of various types. Mountains also have special importance from the view point of tourism, health resorts and beauties of nature.

All the major mountains of the world the Himalayas, The Rockies (North America), the Andes (South America), The Alps (Europe), are the fold mountains which owe their origin to these movements.

**Sudden Movements :** We study slow movements of the Earth previously, which have changed the face of earth. It means due to these movements, different types of mountain came into existence. The sudden movements are abrupt and quick. Sometimes within seconds they raise local area upwards or cause them sinking. These are mostly notice during earth quakes or volcanic activities.

**Volcanoes :** Among the endogenic forces the volcanoes is typical operation process. The process of volcanoes is related with the eruption of **magma**, the molten viscous rock material through the soft surface of the earth and accumulates on the earth surface. Due to process of earth quake, the cracks appear on the earth surface; which increase the activity of Volcanoes. Our scientists are not fully aware of the reasons of volcanic activity. It is essential to have knowledge about volcanic activity; as whenever there is eruption of volcanoes, these cause great loss of life and property. The krakatova- Volcanic eruption caused tidal waves about 16 metre high killing 3600 people in west Jawa. The Volcanic eruption in Mexico in 1943 depopulated an area of 750 sq. kilometers and caused huge loss.

The volcanoes are not only harmful, but they bring some good effects also. They produce valuable minerals and gases. The weathered and decomposed volcanic rocks yield very fertile soil. Crater lakes are formed in the crater of extinct volcanoes. Lake lonar in Maharashtra in an example of crater lake. Geysors and hot springs are found in volcanic activity

areas. Some of which are being utilized to generate power. The volcanic area also presents a great deal of scenic beauty and are the center of tourists' attraction.

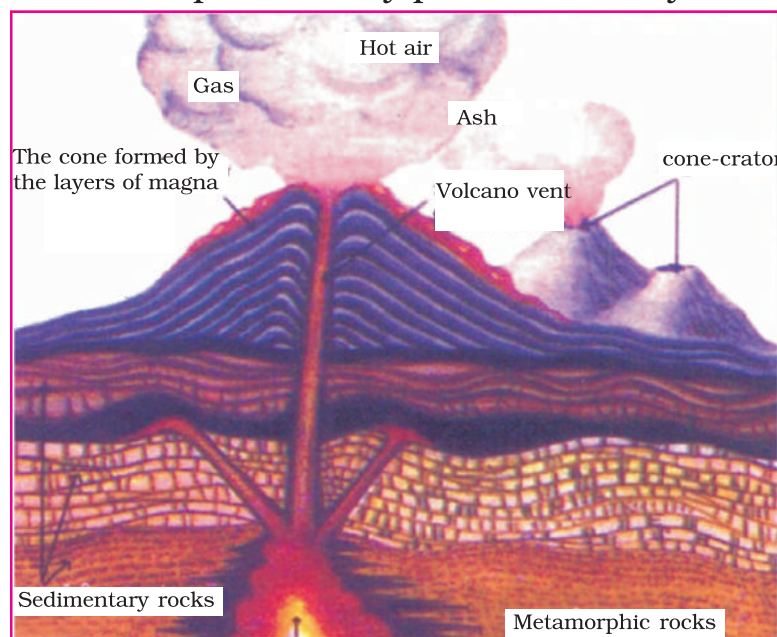
**Types of Volcanoes :** These can be divided into three types

- i. Active Volcanoes
  - ii. Extinct Volcanoes
  - iii. Dormant Volcanoes
- i. Active volcanoes :** The Volcanoes, which erupt fairly frequently as compared to other or have erupted in the recent past are called active volcanoes. These are located in and around the Pacific Ocean, hence this belt is known as **Ring of Fire**.
- ii. Extinct Volcanoes :** Extinct volcanoes are those, which have not erupted in the historic periods. They are considered to be dead and are not expected to erupt in the near future.

But many a times a volcano thought to be extinct, may suddenly become active

Vesuvius volcano in Italy which was considered to be extinct erupted suddenly in 1979.

- iii. Dormant Volcanoes :** These are also sleeping volcanoes, Dormant Volcanoes have erupted in early period of history but are now quite



**Design 3.4 - Volcanoes**

extinct. The Barren Island volcanoes to the east of Andaman in India are dormant volcanoes.

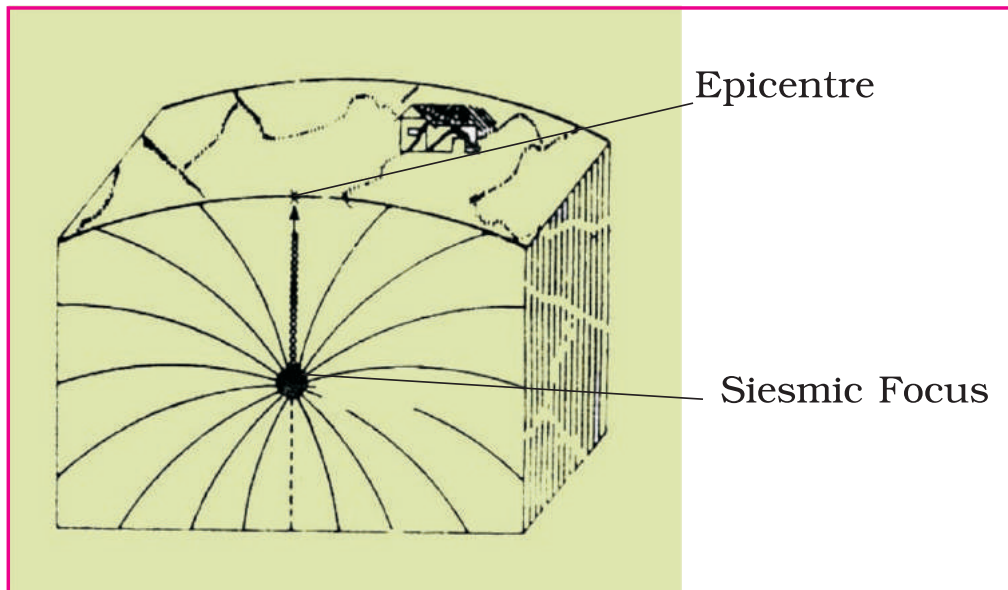
**Volcanic Mountains :** The mountains formed by volcanic activities called by volcanic Mountains. The vent or fissure on the earth surface, through which the hot liquid rock material, hot air and gas, ashes etc. other gushes out of the earth surface and accumulate in the surrounding area in the form of a cone as shown in fig. 3.4.

The volcano eruption can also occur on the surface of the earth through a narrow crack. This crack may be several kilometer long when the lava (magma) erupting out of the crack it spread to a large area. The Deccan trap is the typical example of this volcano in India.

**Earthquake :** In general, the trembling of the earth is known as earthquake. It is the synthesis of two words earth & quake, where quake means 'the trembling' therefore, it is a trembling of earth. Usually the earthquake are the mild tremors of the earth, sometimes change into strong and long, then to a severe tremor.

**Why earthquake occurs :** Our earth's surface is made up of many land masses, which are placed adjoining to one another. These are called Tectonic plates.

These tectonic plates has been floating on viscous liquid. As you have already studied in the previous chapter that the inner most part of the earth is made up of viscous rock material. While floating on the liquid, the plates strike with each other which make a pressure on the crust thus the cracks appear on it. With this movement the waves arise from the centre of the disturbance below the surface, which is called '**Seismic Focus**'. Vibration or earthquake waves travel in all directions. The point on the earth's surface vertically above the focus is called **epicentre**. The shaking is the strongest near the epicentre. As a result big destructions are caused near the epicenter and effect softens away from the epicenter. Records show that most of the earthquakes originate from the **seismic centre** which is at the depth ranging from 50-100 kilometres beneath the earth surface. If the focus is deep within the earth, the tremors are too weak to reach the surface or cause much damage.



**3.5** The siesmic focus and epicentre of the earth

### How the intensity of Earthquake can be measured

How much intense any earthquake is, depends upon the shock waves measured on a Siesmograph. It is also measured by estimating the destruction to wealth and animals, building and the man made and natural structures.

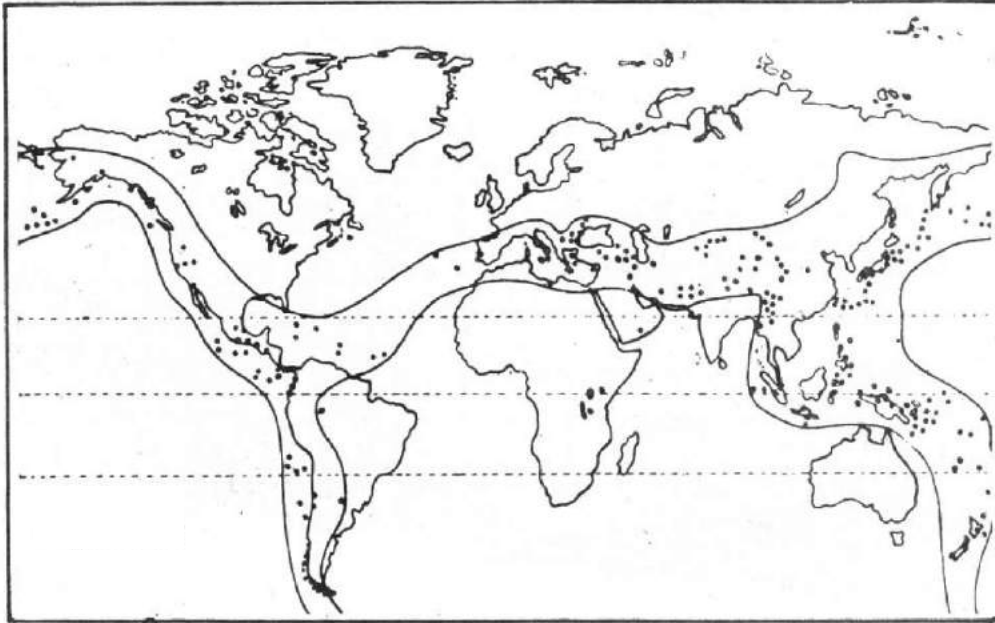
**Siesmograph is an instrument recording the shock waves.**

There are two methods of measuring the Earthquake.

- i. Richter's scale :** This is an open measurement of earthquake intensity i.e. how much intense was the earthquake. Therefore the earthquake at 8 Richter scale is stronger than that of earthquake with 4 Richter scale.
- ii. Mercali's scale :** It is classified into 12 class, the range vary from one with no destruction and 12 - is denoted by the highest destruction due to the earthquake.

**Distribution of earthquake areas :** About two third of the earthquake occurs in the world occur in the region of Pacific ocean, "ring of fire". Which is closely linked with the region of volcanic activity and crustal dislocation. Second belt, the mid world belt which accounts for about 20 percent of earthquakes run through mid Atlantic island. Alps mountains, Himalayas and Indonesia.





**Design 3.6** The distribution of earthquake areas in the world

The earthquakes in India are mainly confined to the Himalayan region and its foot hills. The effect of these have also been felt in the plains of Ganga. There have been a number of violent earthquake in historic time causing large scale damages.



**3.7** A scene after the earthquake

**A case study of Gujarat earthquake :** In Jan 26, 2001 a earthquake occurred in Gujarat. More than, 13000 people were killed, more than 15 Lacs people injured and more than 3.4 Lacs buildings were damaged. The epicentre of the earthquake was 'Bhuj'. During this earthquake a fault occurred from East to West. Due to this compression the Indian tectonic plate was displaced to northward towards Eurasia.

## Plateaus

Plateau is an upland area with steep slopes and a levelled summit. Normally its height is between 300 and 600 metres above sea level. It is also known as tableland. However, plateaus are not distinguished from plains and mountains merely on the basis of height above sea level for example the plateau of Bolivia in Europe is 3660 metres high above sea level and the plateau of Tibet, the highest in the world is 6100 metres high above sea level. Its height is greater than even some mountains, for example, the piedmont plateau of Appalachian Mountain in North America is only 900 metres high above the sea level. Thus, the plateaus are distinguished from plains and mountains not on the basis of their height above sea level, but their shape, structure, origin and the height of the surface are also taken into account. The most important basis for the identification of a plateau is its situation. Plateaus are of three different types:

### (a) Intermontane Plateaus

Plateaus surrounded by mountains on all sides, are known as intermontane plateaus. The Plateaus of Tibet, Anatolia and Bolivia belong to this class.

### (b) Piedmont Plateaus

Plateaus which have a mountain on one side seem to be situated at the foot of the mountain. They are called piedmont plateaus. Piedmont plateau of the U.S. the plateau of Malwa in India and the plateau of Patagonia in Argentina are best examples of such plateaus.

### (c) Continental Plateaus

Continental Plateaus are generally very extensive and are surrounded by ocean or the plains. Prominent examples are the plateaus of Southern

India, western Australia and Africa. Density of population on plateaus is less than on mountains.

**The importance of Plateaus :** Like mountains plateaus too are important for human life in various ways because they contain several minerals like iron, copper, silver, gold, valuable stones etc. The grasslands being plentiful in plateaus, the occupation of animal rearing is important. Lava generated plateaus have fertile soil, which is useful for agriculture. In most wet regions, plateaus have several waterfalls, which are important from the point of view of tourism and generation of hydroelectricity.

**External forces :** These forces are generated by the solar energy. These are also called as Gradational forces and bring down the angularities or smoothing of the relief of the earth by operating through natural agencies of weathering; wind, running water, glaciers marine waves and animals and plants. They are permanently engaged in conjunction with forces of gravity in transforming the face of the earth. With the aim of bringing the earth's face uniform. The agents of the gradation accomplish this task through four stages.

- a. Weathering - Preparation of the rock material by erosion.
- b. Picking up the rock material.
- c. Transporting the materials by different modes.
- d. Deposition of the materials.

**Weathering (Erosion) :** The process of lowering down the high standing relief and their transportation ultimately to be deposited in the depression on the earth's surface. Cutting down of the high feature is known as **degradation**. Depositing of broken and transported rock material by different agents in the depressions is called as **aggradation**. In this process plains occurred on the earth surface.

**Plains :** Plains are the low lying and even features on the earth's surface. Their average height above the sea level is approximately 300 metres. They are gentle or have no sloping areas.

These processes help in making two types of plains :

1. The plains formed by degradation
2. The plains formed by aggradation

1. **The plains formed by degradation :** The plains are formed by the different agents of weathering i.e. rivers, glaciers, under ground water, wind etc. The highlands like mountains or plains undergo erosional processes for millions of years, lowering down and result in the formation of plains or almost a plain like features on the earth surface. These plains are also called **Pene-plains**. The Amazon basin of South America which is **eroded by river** Amazon, the plains of North Canada, North Europe, Western Siberia are weathered by the erosional processes of **glaciers**. The Sahara plains in Africa are formed by **wind erosion** processes, are some of the typical examples of these weathered plains.
2. **The Plains Formed by aggradation or Depositional Processes :** These plains come in to existence through the depositional activities of the different agents of deposition: i.e. by deposition of the materials brought by the Rivers, Glaciers, Underground water and Wind. The plains formed by depositing the silt brought by the rivers and Glaciers are called Alluvial Plains. The Plains like Ganges Plain in India, Hwang-He river plains in northern China, Young Tse Kiang of central China are the typical examples of Alluvial Plains.

When the flow of water in the rivers slows down, the rivers start leaving behind the material brought by it. In this way a triangular type of plain comes into existence which is called **Delta Plain**.

Delta of Ganga in India, Delta of Hwang-He-in China, delta of Mississippi in United States of America are the typical example of deltaic plains. The plains of **North America** and **Northern Europe** are formed by the **deposition by glacier**.

**The Plains formed by wind deposition :** The plains include the 'Loess Plain' of china which are formed by the deposition of powdery type of soil brought by wind from the dry areas.

**Lacustrine Plain :** The plains formed by the deposition of sand/silt on the ground areas of lakes, and other stagnant water bodies. For example Kashmir valley plain in India, Imphal basin in Manipur are the some of the typical examples of this type of plains.



**Coastal plain :** The plains formed by eroding, picking and depositing the rock material by the sea waves along the continental shelf are called, coastal plains. For example the coastal plain of Kerala in India is formed similarly.

**The Importance of plains :** Plains are very useful for human beings. Almost even relief, fertile soil, appropriate level of underground water make them unique example from the economic point of view. Due to these reasons, the activities like agriculture, industry, means of transport and communication are more developed in these plains. Eighty out of hundred people (80%) of the world population live in plains. These are known by the name of **Food Grain Bowl** of the world.

#### Points to Remember

1. Changes occur continuously on the surface of Earth which may be due to internal or external forces of Earth. These forces may act vertically or horizontally and slow or fast.
2. Three types of physical features are found on Earth, namely Mountains, Plateaus and Plains.
3. Mountains are generally of four types, namely; Fold, Block, Dissected and Volcanic.
4. Plateaus are of three types mainly, Intermontane, Piedmont, Continental.
5. Plains may be formed by erosion or deposition of soil.



#### I. Give answer approximately in 1-15 words to the following questions.

1. In how many categories can we classify the forces which have changed the face of the earth?
2. Name the main land-forms of the earth.
3. On the basis of action process in how many types can we divide the internal forces of the earth.

4. On the basis of direction effect classify these internal forces.
5. What is a Puzzle ?
6. How does a sudden movement affect the earth ?
7. Name the two scales which are used to measure the intensity of the earthquake.
8. Which are the two processes that involve in making of Plains?
9. Write about the coastal plains.

**II. Give answer to the following question in approximately 50-60 words.**

1. How did the fold mountain came into existence, Give examples.
2. What is the difference between Block mountain and Rift Valley.
3. Which are the processes involved in the plateaus forming on the earth ? What is their importance ?
4. How do the mountains affect us? How many types of mountains are there? Name them.
5. Explain the plain formed by the process of aggradations give example.
6. Give a case study regarding the earthquake occurred in Gujarat.
7. Write down the types of volcanoes.
8. Write down the distribution of earthquake areas and volcanic hit areas of the world.
9. Write about the following:
  - (a) Plains formed by wind deposition
  - (b) Lacustrine Plains

**III. Write down the answer in approximately 125-130 words of the following questions.**

1. How do the External and Internal Forces of earth change the face of the earth ? Throw light on the plains formed by the process of weathering.



2. How the internal forces worked out in changing the face of the earth.



1. Make a diagram/model of volcanic mountains.

2. **Make right pairs :**

- |                         |                       |
|-------------------------|-----------------------|
| (a) Pacific Ocean       | 1. Himalyan Mountains |
| (b) Continental Plateau | 2. Earthquake         |
| (c) Lonar Lake          | 3. Ring of fire       |
| (d) Fold Mountain       | 4. Maharashtra        |
| (e) Richter Scale       | 5. Southern India     |





The existence of mankind and other living beings have only been possible on the Earth because it is surrounded by a cover of air. This cover is known as Atmosphere and it extends upto 1600 km. in height while 99% of the air is found at height of upto 32 km only. This atmosphere interacting with Lithosphere (Land) and Hydrosphere (Water) is responsible for creating and maintaining of plants and animal life on the Earth. The elements of atmosphere, temperature, humidity, atmospheric pressure and winds affect the physical environment of the Earth. Out of all the elements of the environment, atmosphere experiences maximum changes.

**Elements of physical Environment :** Lithosphere (Land), Hydrosphere (Water) and Atmosphere (Air) are the main elements of the physical environment.

**Elements of Atmosphere :** Air, Temperature, Humidity (Water content in air), Atmospheric pressure (Weight of the air engulfing the Earth) etc. are the elements of the Atmosphere.

**Composition of Atmosphere:** The atmosphere consists of gases, water vapours and dust particles. Heavier components like dust particles and water vapours are found only in the lower layers of the atmosphere. As we go higher in the atmosphere the density of gases goes on decreasing. Nitrogen, Oxygen and Carbondioxide constitute 99% of the atmosphere. All other gases account for less than 1%. The contents of water vapours and dust particles vary from place to place as determined by the degree of temperature. A sample of pure dry air in the atmosphere contains gases in the following proportion :

Gas	No of Quantity
Nitrogen	78.03%
Oxygen	20.99%
Argon	00.94%
Carbon dioxide	00.03%
Hydrogen	00.01%

**Nitrogen** mostly circulates in the lower layers of the atmosphere and checks destruction of the plant life.

**Oxygen** is the second important gas that supports animal and human life.

**Carbon dioxide** is the third important gas and is as essential for plant life as oxygen is for animal life. It also acts as blanket and does not allow the heat to escape.

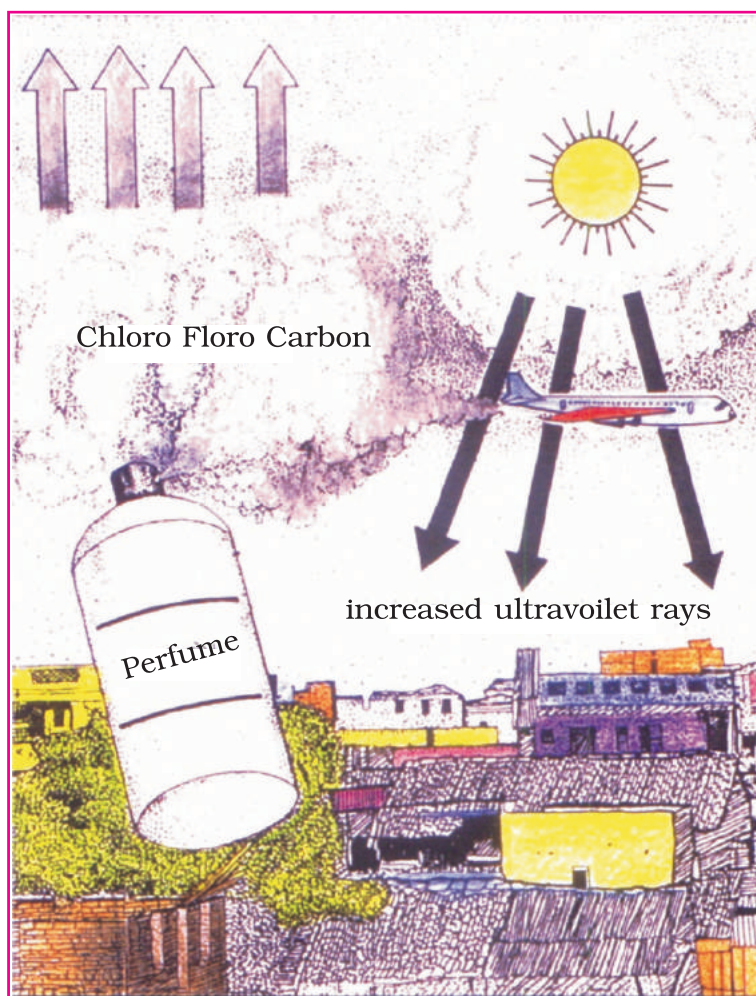
**Water Vapour :** The water vapours also have an important place in Atmosphere. They help in change of climate.

**Convectional Current:** As you know, by heating gas expands, the density of air reduces and it starts rising upwards in its turn the cool air due to high density comes in contact with earth surface. It means when the heated air rise upward and is replaced by the cool air. Thus the circulation of the air starts. This is the cycle of convection.

**Pollution of Air :** Every year millions of tons of substances are added to the atmosphere which are not natural compenents. These foreign substances in the atmosphere are called **air pollutants**. There are two kinds of air pollutants-solid and gaseous. Volcanoes are most common source of pollution in the atmosphere. Human activities also add large amount to solid pollutants to the air, particularly in cities smoke from the burning of fuels release carbon particles (Coal) and other solids into the air. Industries release dust particles in the air on a large scale through various operations. Asbestos is a dangerous form of solid pollution.

One of the most dangerous sources of gaseous pollution is exhaust

materials of the automobiles. It add carbon monoxide to the air in areas of heavy traffic and is very poisonous. Now a days we also talk about some, combination of natural fog and smoke called as **Smog** which is a mixture of substances that cause serious health problems. Low level ozone is an effect of air pollution, caused by heavy traffic and industries, particularly in industrial areas where many people live and work. Laws have been passed to control the sources of air pollutants. But, we ourselves have to be aware in this regard to combat pollution of air.



#### 4.1 Design - Air - Pollution

All these gases hold the suspended particles of dust, carbon, salt, pollen grains but only in the lower layers of atmosphere.

#### Structure of Atmosphere :

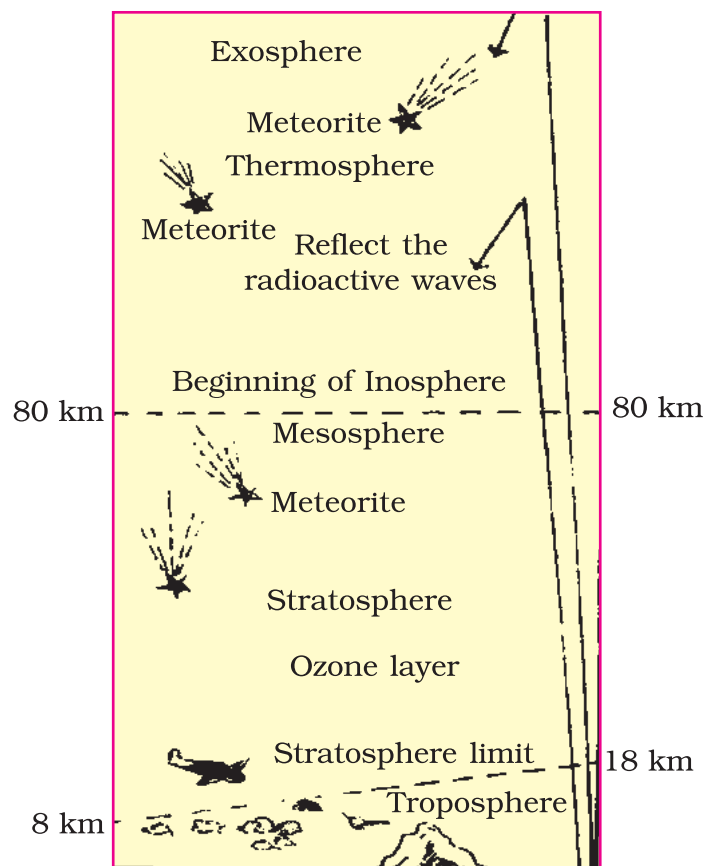
In the previous decades enormous knowledge has been collected

regarding atmosphere by sending satellites in the space. On the basis of this knowledge, atmosphere may be divided into following layers :

- i) Troposphere
- ii) Stratosphere
- iii) Mesosphere
- iv) Thermosphere

### **Troposphere :**

The lowest layer of the atmosphere is called **Troposphere**. Atmosphere is oval in shape with average height of troposphere is 12 km. It is higher at the equator, i.e. 16-18 km and lower at the poles to 6-8 km. The entire weather phenomenon takes place only in this layer i.e. Rainfall, Storms, Clouds, Typhoon etc. The contents of water vapour are also high in this layer. As we go high up, the temperature decreases. The temperature decreases at the rate of 6-5 degree celsius per kilometer. The 75% of all the air, is present in this layer.



**4.2** Layers of Atmosphere



**Stratosphere :** Above the troposphere layer, the second layer of the atmosphere is called **Stratosphere**. The height of this layer varies with seasons and latitudes. During summers it begins at a greater height than during the winters. Its height at the equator is about 15 kilometres. But above the 60° latitudes and beyond it is 10 kilometers. The main characteristics of this zone are rarified air, low but constant temperature and general absence of clouds. Therefore, there are no convectional current in this zone. The thickness of stratosphere is almost 50-55 km. This zone is ideal for flying of aircraft. The ozone gas in this layer absorbs the ultra violet rays of the sun which are harmful to the human life on the earth surface.

The upper limit of this layer is known as **tropopause**, this usually begins at 50 km height of the atmosphere. The temperature in the layer neither increases nor decreases. It remains constant.

**Mesosphere :** The layer above the tropopause is **mesosphere**. This layer extends upto 50 km. to 60 km. The temperature in this layer goes on decreasing with the rise in height. The temperature at 80 km height is -90° Celsius.

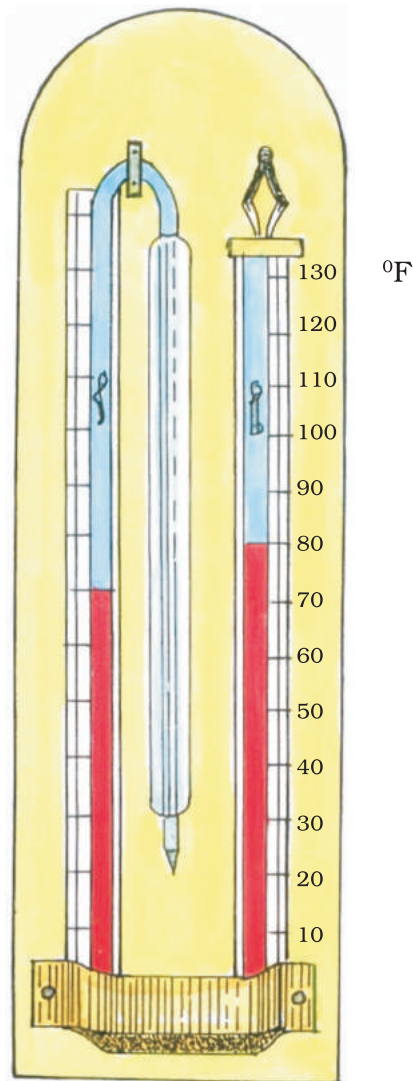
The upper layer of the mesosphere is called as Mesosphere limit. Beyond this limit of atmosphere the temperature starts rising.

**Thermosphere :** Beyond the mesosphere, the layer of atmosphere is called as **thermosphere**. Temperature starts rising as we go high. There are much less contents of gases in this layer.

The lowest limit of thermosphere is known as **Ionosphere** which extends upto 100 km.to 300 km. It contains electrically charged particles which help in the reflection of radio waves back to the earth and are much of value for wireless communication. The upper limit of this layer is called **exosphere**. We do not have much knowledge about this layer but it is considered to have the gases with low density like Hydrogen & Helium.

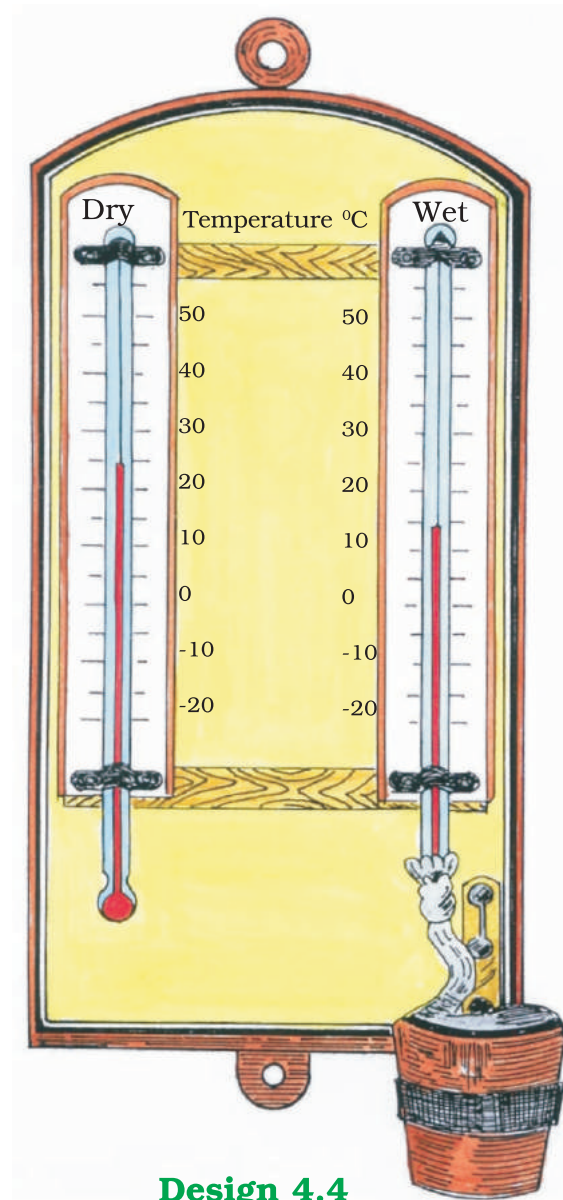
**Weather :** By weather of a place is meant by the condition of the temperature, atmospheric pressure, rainfall, speed and direction of the wind of a place for about 24 hours. These conditions change from day to day.

**Climate:** It is the average of weather conditions of a place over a long period generally of 30 to 35 years. It depends upon various factors, as the latitudes, altitude, distance from the sea, prevailing winds, ocean currents, cloudiness, rainfall and slope of the land and other geographic conditions.



**Design 4.3**

Maximum & Minimum  
Thermometer



**Design 4.4**

Dry & wet bulb  
Thermometer

**Temperature :** The heat of the air is called temperature. Similarly the internal heat of a good or living being is also called temperature. The temperature increases or decreases and same type of variation in day

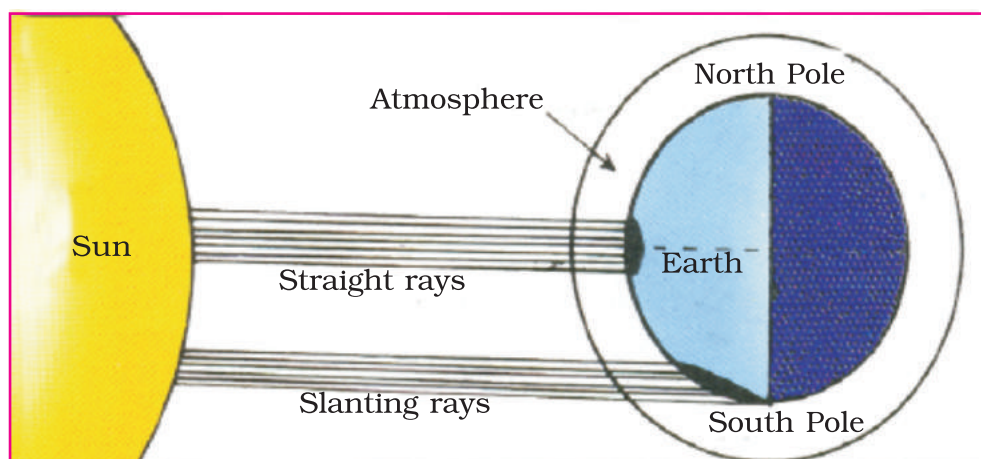
and night temperature is also there. Similarly the temperature varies with change of season. The temperature differs from place to place hence the weather conditions of one place differ to that of weather conditions of other place. Although there are so many factors that affect the weather of a place but temperature of the air is one of the main elements.

There are only two sources of temperature that heat the earth. Sun and internal part of the earth. Out of these, the sun is more important. The insolation (heat from the sun) primarily heat the surface of the earth then heat the atmosphere. There are so many factors that affect the insolation received at a place. Before knowing about the other factors, we must know how to measure the temperature.

The temperature is measured by **Thermometer**. It is demarcated in degrees. For measuring the temperature two units are used, one is Celsius and the other is Fahrenheit. According to the Celsius unit of measurement, water boils at  $100^{\circ}\text{C}$  & freezes at  $0^{\circ}\text{C}$  and according to Fahrenheit measurement water boils at  $212^{\circ}\text{F}$  and freezes at  $32^{\circ}\text{F}$ .

Factors affecting the temperature: Following are factors that affect the temperature of the earth.

- a) Latitude :** The temperature of a place depends upon how much insolation it gets. The rays of the sun fall directly on the equator therefore the temperature is high over there. But as we slip away from the equator the temperature goes on decreasing because the rays of sun fall slanting on the poles.



**Design 4.5** Inclination angle of sunrays

- b) **Height above the sea level :** When we go higher above the sea level. The temperature starts falling. Insolation that is received on the earth is primarily heat the surface of the earth. Then the atmosphere gets heated thus the places near the surface or lower in height are hotter than the places at higher in height. This is the reason, when we go up to hill side the temperature decreases.
- c) **Distance from the sea :** There is a moderate type of climate near the sea, it means that the temperature neither extremely high nor extremely low. But as we go away from the sea the range of temperature increases.
- d) **The texture of earth surface :** Which type of the vegetation is there, whether the earth's surface is covered by ice or is a dry desert. These are the factors that affect the distribution of temperature. Where the earth surface is covered by ice the reflection of sun rays occurs which causes the low temperature. In dry areas there is high temperature during the day time, because sand gets heated easily. Where there are dense forests, the temperature neither shoot up extremely high up nor fall down extremely low but it remains the moderate.
- e) **Slope of the Land:** Slopes facing the sun have higher temperature as they get the sun rays for a longer duration than those facing away from the sun. The sunny slopes have higher temperature.
- f) **Clouds and Rainfall:** Places having cloudy skies and rainfall have lower temperature than those without these. Clouds obstruct the free fall of sun rays thus lower the temperature. After rainfall the water vapours are present in the air. They absorb the heat of the air.
- g) **Ocean currents:** The areas where the hot water ocean current passes, that raises the temperature of the area. The temperature lowers down where the cold water current passes, you will study in detail regarding the oceans in the following chapter.

### Points to Remember

1. There are three parts of natural environment namely; Hydrosphere, Lithosphere and Atmosphere. Air, Temperature and Moisture are parts of Atmosphere.
2. Principal gas in Atmosphere is Nitrogen constituting 78.03% part while Oxygen is 20.99% and rest in the mixture of Argon, Carbon dioxide and Hydrogen among others.
3. Lowest part of Atmosphere is Troposphere, preceded by Stratosphere, Mesosphere and Exosphere the top.
4. Minimum and Maximum thermometer is used to measure temperature while Dry and Wet bulb thermometer is used to measure humidity in air.
5. Temperature of a place depends upon factors like height from sea level, distance from sea, type of relief etc.



#### I. Answer the following questions in about 1-15 words.

1. What do you understand by the Atmosphere ?
2. Why do we study Atmosphere in Geography ?
3. Name the layers of Atmosphere.
4. Which is called Tropopause limit.
5. What do you understand by Exosphere ?
6. What are the elements other than the gases present in the atmosphere.
7. What is air pollution ?
8. What is temperature and what are the units of measuring the temperature.
9. Why is the temperature very high on the equator ?
10. Why is there a difference in day time and night time temperature ?
11. Why is the temperature of Shimla lower than that of Chandigarh ?



**II. Give answers to the following question in about 50-60 words.**

1. What are the main factors that cause air pollution.
2. What we call the lower layer of the atmosphere ?
3. Write the ratio of main gases in the air.
4. In which layer of the atmosphere the ozone gas exist. Why is it so important.

**III. Give answer to the following question in approximately 125-130 words.**

1. Explain in detail the layers of atmosphere.
2. Explain in detail the factors affecting the temperature of a place.

**IV. Fill in the blanks.**

1. As we go up to the hills the temperature \_\_\_\_\_.
2. The main sources of the temperature are \_\_\_\_\_ and \_\_\_\_\_.
3. The ozone gas absorbs \_\_\_\_\_ rays.
4. The electrically charged particles are found in \_\_\_\_\_ layer.
5. The wireless communication system works under \_\_\_\_\_ waves.
6. \_\_\_\_\_ gas is found in maximum quantity in atmosphere.



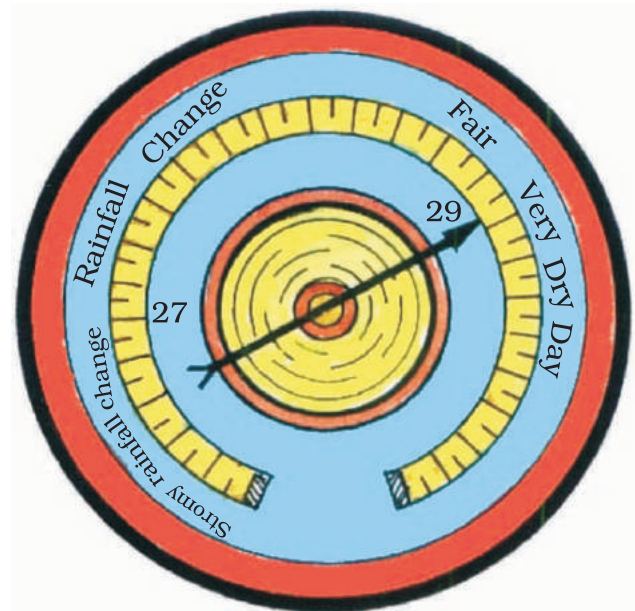
1. What rules should be followed to avoid air pollution, prepare a chart and put it in your classroom.
2. Draw a diagram of Atmosphere showing different layers.





In the previous chapters you have studied climate and temperature as elements of Atmosphere. In this chapter we will study other elements such as atmospheric pressure and winds. Many questions may arise in your minds like, what is atmospheric pressure ? How do the winds arise? What types of winds are there ? What is the geographic distribution of these winds and so on.

**Atmospheric Pressure :** As you already know that air is a physical good and a mixture of different gases, it contains some weight also. The weight of air is called atmospheric pressure. This is measured in terms of weight per unit area of the air. The Barometer is used to measure the atmospheric pressure of the earth. The atmospheric pressure of the air is 29.92 inches or 76 centimeters or 760 millimeter on the sea level.



**Design 5.1** Aneroid Barometer

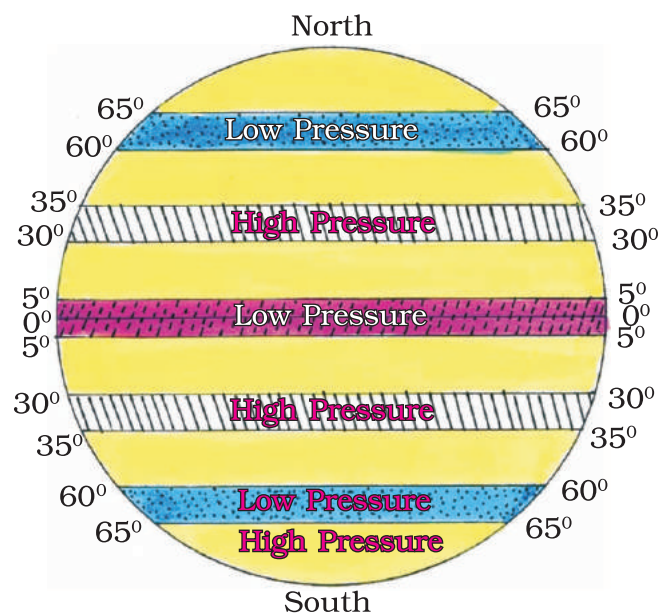
There is a close relation between atmospheric pressure and temperature. When the temperature is high the pressure is low and when the temperature is low the pressure is high. Because when the air gets heated, the per unit area air expands and rises above therefore pressure decreases. Similarly the air pressure decreases with the increase in height of a place.

**Wind :** Blowing air is called wind. The wind flows from high pressure area to low pressure area. On the map the pressure is shown by the Isobars.

Isobars are the lines that join the places of equal atmospheric pressure at a time.

### The major pressure belts of the Earth and the Planetary wind:

The distribution of atmospheric pressure is quite systematic. You already know that there is close relation between temperature and air pressure. As the rays of sun fall directly on the equator the temperature is high on the equator. After heating, the air which is in contact with the earth, rises up. This flow is called **convectioanl current** of the air. As heated air rises up, at the equator  $5^{\circ}$  north and  $5^{\circ}$  south of the equator create a low pressure belt. This is also called as '**doldrums**'.



**Design 5.2** Pressure Belts

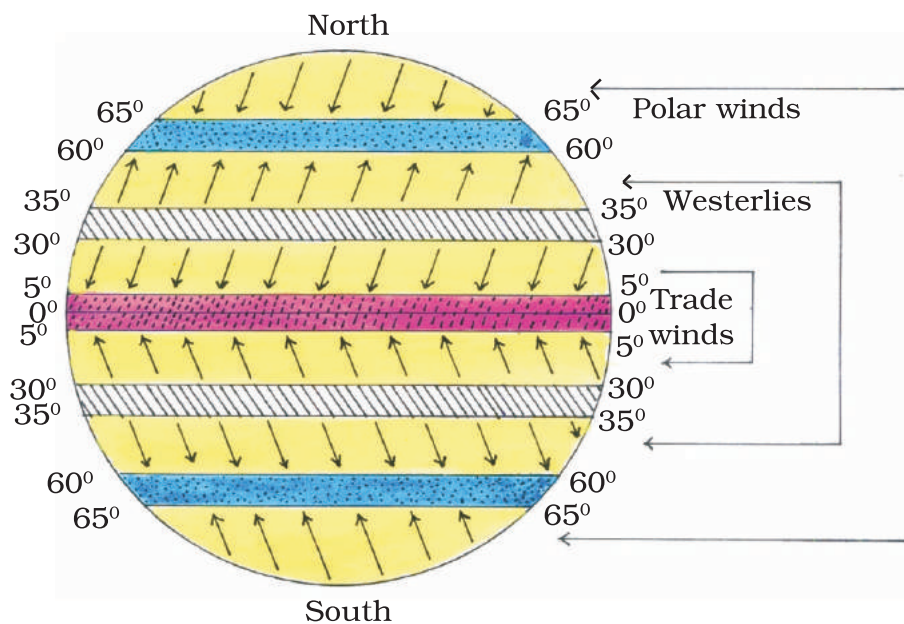
The hot air rising from the equator becomes colder on reaching at height and wind starts blowing towards poles. After reaching at  $30^{\circ}$  northern and southern latitudes these winds get cold and start descending, while density of these winds increases. This results into forming belt of high pressure at these latitudes. These are also known as **Horse Latitudes**.

At the  $60^{\circ}$  north and south Latitudes again, low pressure belts emerge. In the diagram no 5.2 the distribution of belts have been shown.

**Planetary Winds :** After understanding the pressure belts, it is not difficult to understand the Planetary winds. As these winds always blow from the area of high pressure to the low pressure areas. These winds generally blow from mid latitudes to the equator and towards the pole while blowing North to South, these wind do not go straight because the Earth rotates from west to east. Therefore, the flow of wind diverts. To, understand the deviation of winds, 'Ferrel's Law' should be understood essentially.

According to the Ferrel's Law, freely moving natural objects in the northern hemisphere divert to their right and in southern hemisphere these divert to their left Fig. 5.3.

**Trade Winds :** The winds blowing towards the equator are called **Trade winds**, in old days the winds helped the ships to move thus these winds derived their name. In the northern hemisphere, these are called north eastern trade winds, and in the southern hemisphere these are called south eastern trade winds.



**Design 5.3** The Planetary-winds

The wind blowing towards poles are called as **westerlies**. In the northern hemisphere, these blow from south west to north east and in southern hemisphere these blow from north west to south east these winds blow in both the hemispheres between  $30^{\circ}$  to  $65^{\circ}$  latitudes.

Similarly the winds blow from poles toward  $60^{\circ}$ - $65^{\circ}$  latitudes are called **polar winds**.

Trade winds, westerlies and the polar winds are called the **planetary winds**. The speed and direction of Trade winds always remain the same. In olden times these winds helped ships to move in seas, between Europe and America therefore these winds derived their name.

The westerlies along with polar winds are helpful in creating cyclones in between  $60^{\circ}$ - $65^{\circ}$  latitudes.

**Monsoon winds :** There is difference of opinions among the Geographers and Meteorologists about their formation but monsoon winds are those winds that change their direction with the change in season. These seasonal winds affect East Asia, North East Australia, and on the small part of the East Africa. In summers these winds, blow from ocean to land and in winters these blow from land to the oceans. The summer monsoon winds bring rainfall because while moving over the oceans, these carry water vapours along with.

**Summer Monsoon winds :** Southern, South east and Eastern Asian countries get a large amount of rainfall through the summer season monsoon winds. In May-June, two areas of low pressure, in north east India and Pakistan and in mid Asia are formed. This is because the sun rays fall directly over the Tropic of Cancer and wind starts blowing from the high pressure area i.e. oceanic area to the low pressure areas.

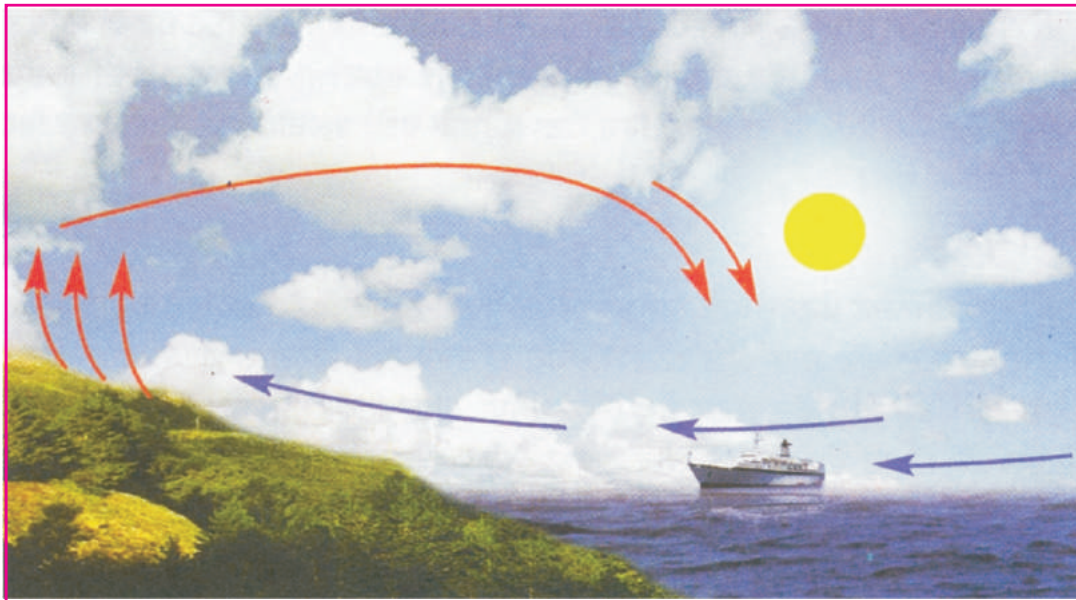
**The Monsoon of the Indian Sub-continent :** In summers there is high pressure area over the Indian ocean, because of the difference of temperature over the land and water. The winds start moving from the equator to the low pressure area of the sub-continent of India. While the winds blow from oceans, these are laden with water vapours. Thus the Indian sub-continent get rain heavily. Usually it was considered, that the monsoons are related with the low pressure and the high pressure. But now-a-days a different natural law has been derived. According to this



law, the monsoons are related with the circulation of the air in the upper layer of the Atmosphere.

**Monsoon of the Winter season:** In winters in the northern hemisphere and the interiors of the Asian continent get colder thus there is high pressure as compared to the land near the oceans, where it is low pressure. Thus in winters the winds blow from land to the oceans. Usually the winds are dry winds, whenever they pass over the ocean they carry the humidity and they provide rain to the area they visit. For example the coastal area of western Japan and Chennai get rainfall from winter monsoon.

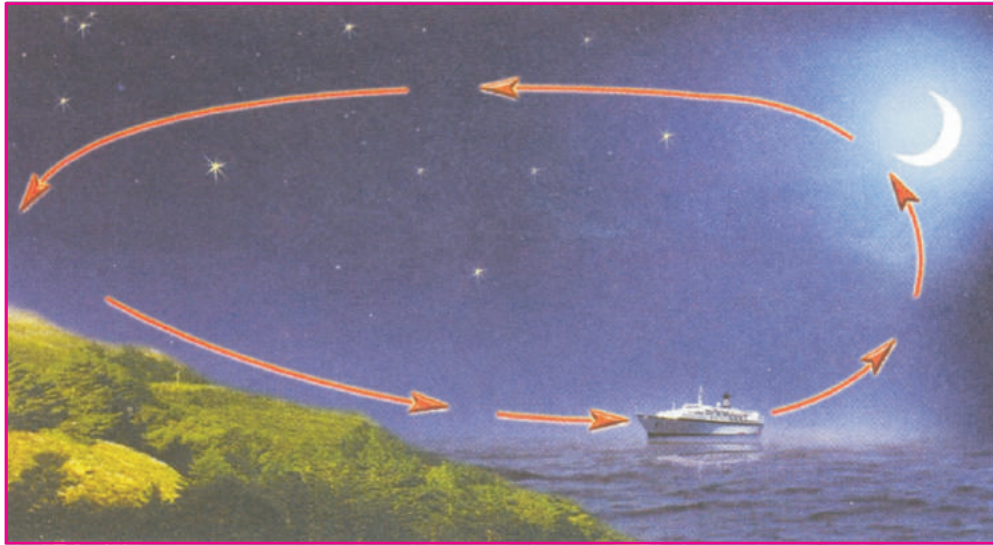
**Local Winds :** The local winds includes, Land Breeze, Sea Breeze, Mountain and Valley Winds, Fohen and Chinook.



**Design 5.4** Sea Breeze

**Sea Breeze :** During the day time the land gets heated more than the oceans. Thus there is low pressure area in the land as compared to the oceans where it is high pressure. Thus during the day time the cold winds start blowing towards the land. This is called Sea Breeze.

**Land Breeze :** During the night, the opposite condition prevails the land gets cold as compared to the ocean. Thus there is low pressure area on the ocean, and high pressure in the lands. Winds blow from land to oceans during the night. Therefore, these are called Land Breeze.

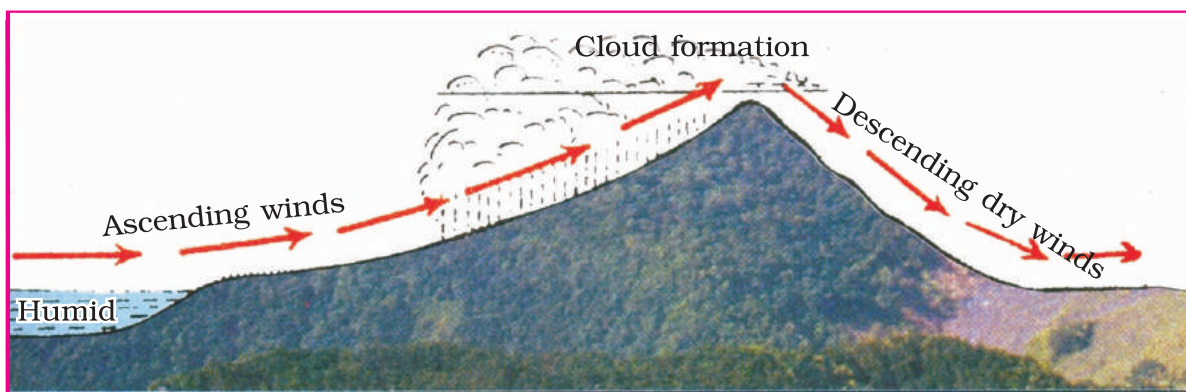


**5.5** Land Breeze

**Mountain and Valley Winds :** During the night the wind over the peaks gets cold, and start moving towards valley. During the day the winds start moving upwards from the valley. These are called Mountain and Valley Winds.

**Fohn and Chinook Winds:** These are different from mountain and valley winds. These are common in Switzerland, here these are known as Fohn winds. In north America and Eastern sides of Rocky mountain these winds are called Chinook. In this case, the winds rise upward along the hills.

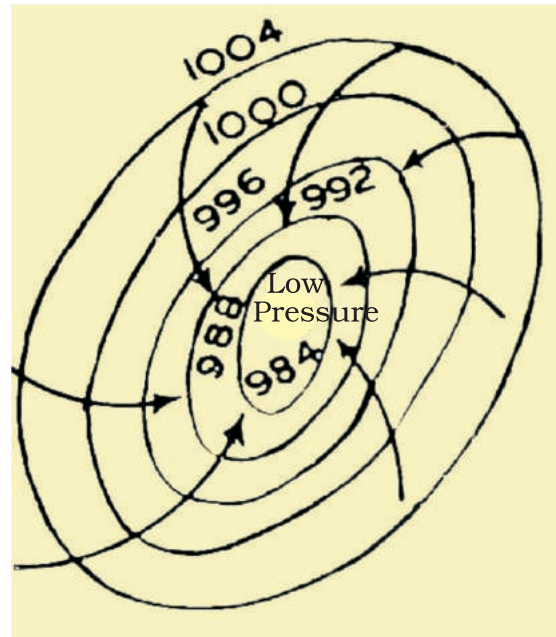
If there is humidity in it, it cools down after reaching the height and condensation starts. This causes formation of clouds. Still further higher



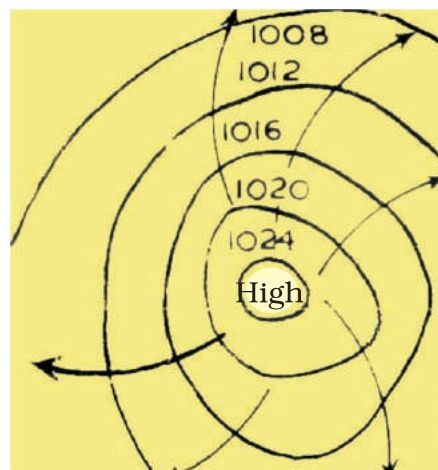
**Design 5.6** - Fohn and Chinook Winds

they freeze into droplets and falls. And on the other side of slope of hills from where it starts descending it will turn into warm and dry

**Cyclones :** This is the circulation of the air. In the circulation, there is low pressure at the centre and high pressure on the exterior of the circle. The wind from the exterior side where there is high pressure starts blowing into the interior where there is low pressure. The direction of the circulation of the winds is anticlockwise direction in the northern hemisphere and clockwise direction in the southern hemisphere. Many European countries get rainfall through these cyclones. The north west of India gets rainfall through these cyclones in winters.



**Design 5.7 - Cyclone**



**Design 5.8 - Anticyclone**

**Anticyclone :** In the anticyclone there is high pressure area in the centre. The wind from the interior high pressure areas blow away to the exterior in all the direction where there is low pressure. Anticyclone do not help in rainfall. The direction of the winds is in clockwise in Northern hemisphere and anticlockwise in the Southern hemisphere.

### **A case study of destruction during cyclone:**

In May 8, 1990, a cyclone with a speed of 240-250 Kilometer per hour struck to the coast of Andhra Pradesh. With this cyclone, the district of Guntur and Krishna affected the most. It brought a typhoon besides heavy rainfall. The adjoining area to these district are affected by flood. The nine out of twenty three districts were affected by this flood. Around



5923 villages affected by this cyclone, 928 people and 24000 animals were killed by this cyclone. 7.8 million people were affected by this cyclone. 827,100 houses were partially damaged and approximately 569,000 houses were completely damaged. The total loss of wealth was upto Rs 125 million (12.5 crore).



**5.9** Design : Destruction due to Cyclone

Source: Press release, Govt. of Andhra Pradesh.

## **Humidity and Rainfall**

We have studied how the winds blow from high pressure area to low pressure area. Some wind are dry, how speedy they may be, do not bring rain. But some of these winds are such that they blow fast still they rain heavily, what is the reason behind it ? Let us study these winds. What are the reasons that cause rainfall ?

There are water vapours present in the atmosphere but we cannot see them. These unseen water vapours are called Humidity. Due to the heat of the sun, the water of oceans, rivers, lakes, and ponds, etc. has been evaporating in the form of steam, after mixing with the wind, water vapour carrying wind starts circulating in the atmosphere. There is always a some quantity of water vapours present in the air. This is called the humidity of the wind. The quantity of water vapour present in the air, does not always remain same all the places.

There is close relation between humidity and the temperature. When the temperature of an area is high, then there is more capacity to absorb

the humidity as compared to the air which is colder. The cold air have less capacity to absorb more water. Humidity is of two types:

**Absolute Humidity :** It is the amount of humidity present in the air a place at a particular time. The absolute humidity changes with the change in time and place.

**Relative Humidity :** It is the ratio between the amount of humidity present in the air at a particular temperature and place and the capacity of the air to absorb more humidity at the same temperature of that place.

**Saturated Air :** When there is maximum amount of water vapour present in the air it is called as saturated air. There is no more capacity to absorb more humidity in the air.

**Evaporation :** Due to heat, the water goes on changing into steam slowly. This is the reason when we dry the wet cloth in the sun, the water gets evaporated out of the clothes in the air. Thus the evaporation of water in the form of steam and mixing of the steam into the wind is called as Evaporation.

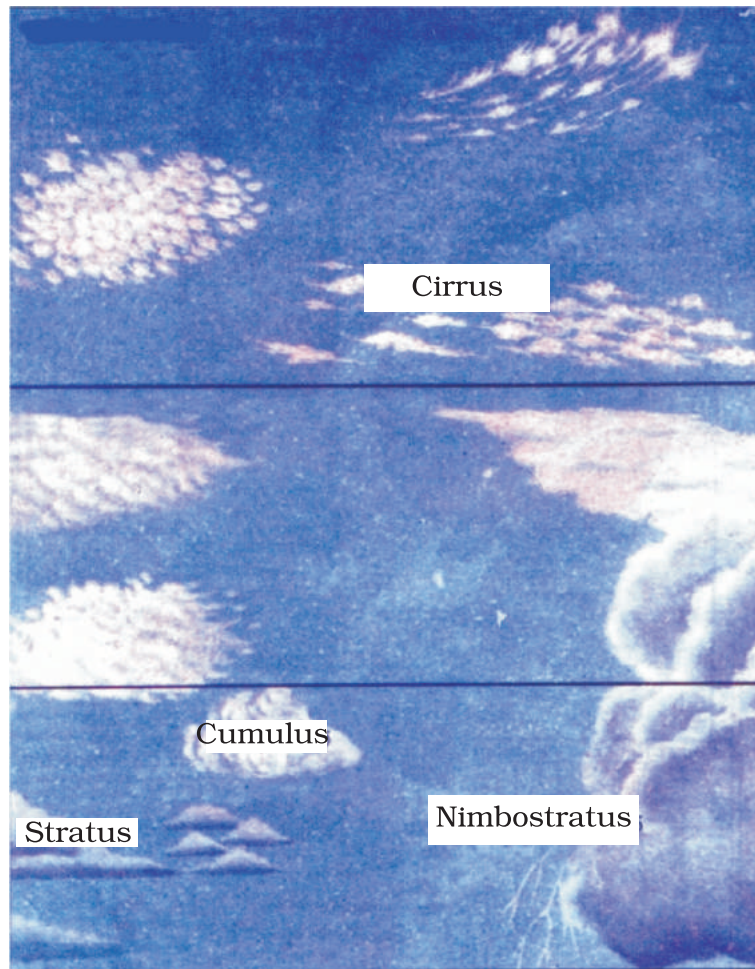
**Condensation :** Due to the heat of the sun the humid winds when rise up in the atmosphere the winds start cooling down. After cooling down, the winds are unable to carry water vapour in it and thus humidity mixed with air change into water from steam. This is called condensation.

**Different forms of Humidity :** The disguised humidity in the air, after undergoing the process of condensation, change into the forms of clouds, fog, dew, hails, snow and rain etc. these are the forms of condensation.

**Cloud :** In summers when temperature is high the water changes into steam. This steam after mixing with the wind rises above. After rising high, it expands and cools down. After cooling of winds it become saturated and are unable to hold the humidity. There are dust particles present in the atmosphere. The small water vapours cling to the dust particles, thus the clouds are formed.

Some clouds are very high in the sky and some are very lower in the sky. Some clouds are very thick and some are light, sometimes the clouds are brown or black in colour. Some clouds are white in colour. Some clouds bring rain heavily and some are only thundering clouds. There are different forms of clouds. Some of these are the following :





**Design 5.10** Forms of clouds

1. **Cirrus** : These clouds are very high in the sky. These appear very light. These are like white feathers.
2. **Cumulus**: These clouds usually appear in summers. These appear as if bales of cotton lying at a place. The upper part of these clouds are dome shaped and have cauliflower heads. These clouds bring rainfall with thundering.
3. **Stratus**: These are also light in colour. They are spread throughout the sky. These are low clouds, which bring drizzle.
4. **Nimbostratus** : These clouds are dense having dark grey colour and are very near to the earth surface, which give us heavy and continuous rain falls.

**Dew** : At night, grass, leaves and other plants get cold when the cold wind comes across with these cold grass, it becomes even colder, as a

result it cannot hold their humidity anymore and the humidity changes into water droplets. The water droplets cling to the grass and leaves. This is called dew. In the cloudy day it does not happen so because clouds do not allow radiation of the earth. You have felt that the night temperature is also higher during the cloudy night.

**Fog :** The wind near the surface of the earth get cold as a result of the water vapour comes near to each other and a process of condensation starts. Humidity of the air resting on the dust particles can be seen moving in the atmosphere. The wind gets dusty and condensed. This is called fog. In industrial areas fog mixed with smoke to becomes **smog**.

**Frost :** It is similar to the fog. The formation of frost is similar to that of fog. The only difference is that when the Fog is more dense it is called Frost. For is formation of both Fog and Frost, it is essential the dust particles to be present in the air.

**Snow:** When the humid wind rises above in the colder areas, it does not change in water but freezes and falls down on the earth in the form of snow. The snow always fall on high mountains or very cold areas. Snow fall takes place only when there are clouds in the sky.

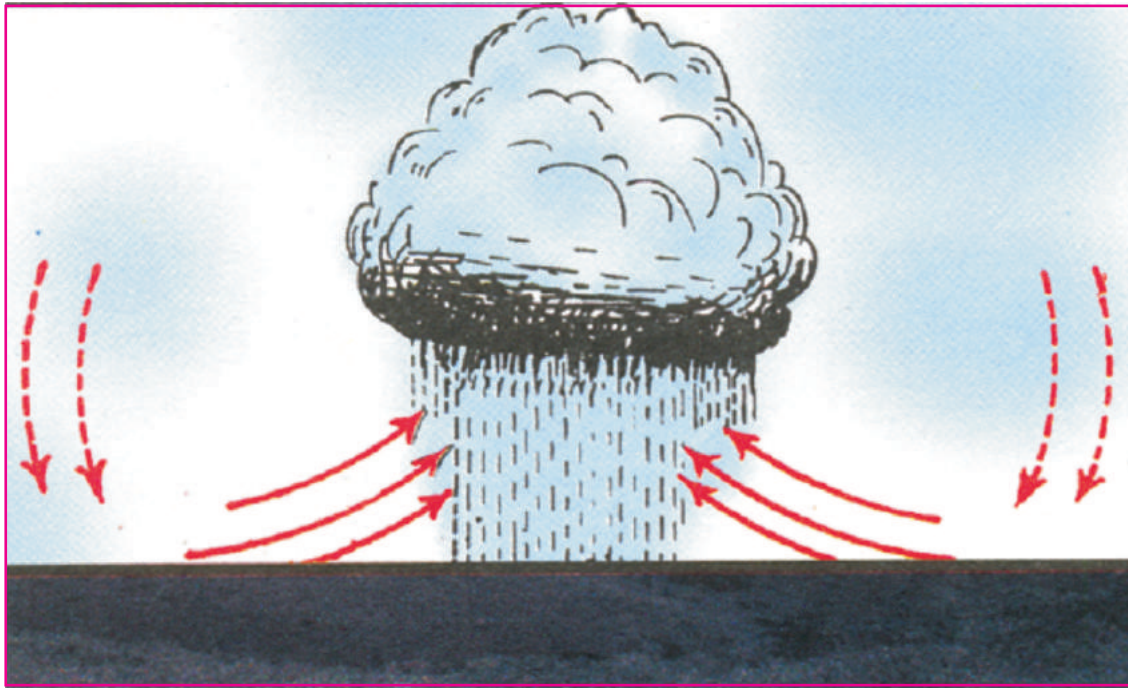
**Hailstorm :** Sometimes when rain passes through the very colder layer of atmosphere. At some places the temperature is below freezing point as a result this water droplets freezes and fall on the Earth in the form of Hails.

**Rainfall (Precipitation):** The process of rainfall is called precipitation. When the humid winds rise above they become colder and thus after condensation humidity change into the form of clouds. When the clouds become more colder then their water vapours become so large that these cannot be held up and changing in droplets fall on the earth. This is called rainfall.

Forms of Rainfall (Precipitation) :

1. Convectional Rainfall
2. Relief Rainfall
3. Cyclonic Rainfall

**Convectional Rainfall :** The sun rays fall directly on the earth surface.



**Design 5.11 - Convectional Rainfall**

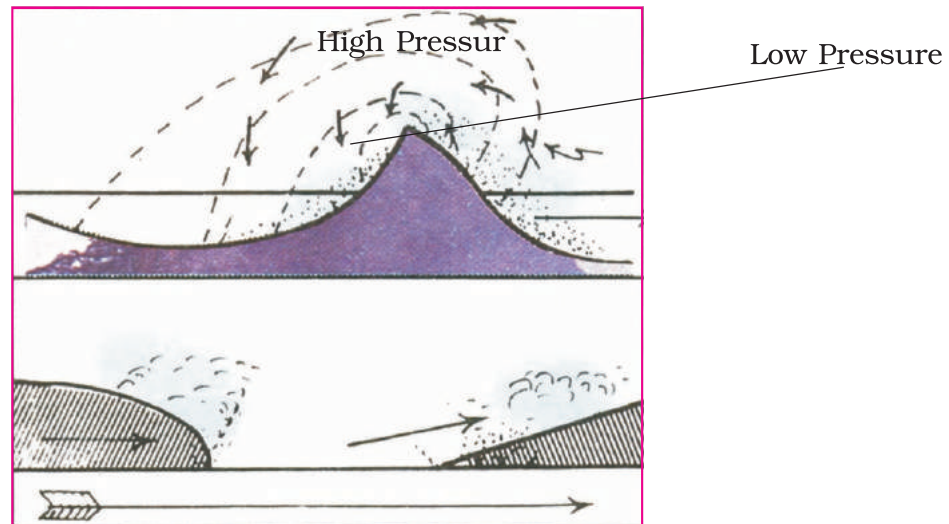
Due to high temperature the air pressure lowers down, winds start rising above after heating changes after rising above the winds become even colder. On changing into the water droplets, these falls in form of rainfall. The convectional rainfall in equatorial areas is a heavy rainfall along with thundering.

**Orographic (Relief) Rainfall:** Sometimes the mountain come across when the wind blows from the ocean towards the land. Due to the obstruction of mountains these wind rises upwards along the mountain. After reaching at a height the wind become cold and process of condensation starts. These fall in the form of rainfall on the ground.



**Design 5.12 - Orographic Rainfall**





**Design 5.13** Cyclonic Rainfall

In India monsoon rainfall in summers is due to the obstruction caused by Himalayan mountains.

The side of the mountain from where the wind ascends and gets heavy rainfall known as **Windward** side and other side where the wind starts descending and do not rainfall are **leeward** side.

**Cyclonic Rainfall:** The rainfall which is due to cyclone is called Cyclonic rainfall. There is low pressure in the centre of cyclones.

Therefore wind arises upwards. After reaching at a height wind become colder the humidity of wind changes into clouds and they cause rainfall on the earth. European countries receive rainfall through the cyclonic type of rainfall. The rainfall in Punjab in winters is also of cyclonic type.

#### Points to Remember

1. Air pressure means, pressure of air at a point which is measured with the help of Barometer. Air flows from high pressure to low pressure.
2. Trade winds, Monsoons, Local Winds, Cyclones, Anti-cyclone etc. originate with flow of wind.
3. Geographic lines identifying and joining regions of same air pressure and same rainfall are called Isobars and Isohytes respectively.
4. Sea Breeze and Land Breeze, Mountain and Valley Winds, Fohn and Chinook are all forms of local winds.

5. Rainfall, Clouds, Dew, Fog, Frost, Snow etc. are forms of moisture found in air.
6. Clouds are generally by four types name; Cirrus, Cumulus, Stratus and Nimbostratus.
7. Percipitation (rainfall) is of three types; Convectional, Relief and Cyclonic.
8. Winter rainfall in Punjab is an example of cyclonic rainfall.



**I. Write down the answer of the following question in about 1-15 words.**

1. What do you understand by the atmosphere ?
2. What are winds ?
3. Name the instrument used to measure air pressure and temperature.
4. What is a Cyclone ?
5. What is humidity ?
6. What do you understand by evaporation and condensation.
7. How many types of rainfall are there ?

**II. Answer the following question in approximately 50-60 words.**

1. What do you understand by Air pressure belts on the earth? Why there is low pressure on the equator ?
2. Differentiate between the planetary and local winds ?
3. Write a case study of destruction caused due to the cyclone that hit in Andhra Pradesh.
4. How many forms of clouds are there. Explain the each type.
5. Give information about Fog, Frost, Dew, snow.



**III. Answer the following questions in approximately 125-130 words**

1. Explain in detail with illustration, the planetary winds.
2. Write in detail about the monsoon winds.
3. What is rainfall. How many types of rainfall are there ? Write in detail with illustrations.

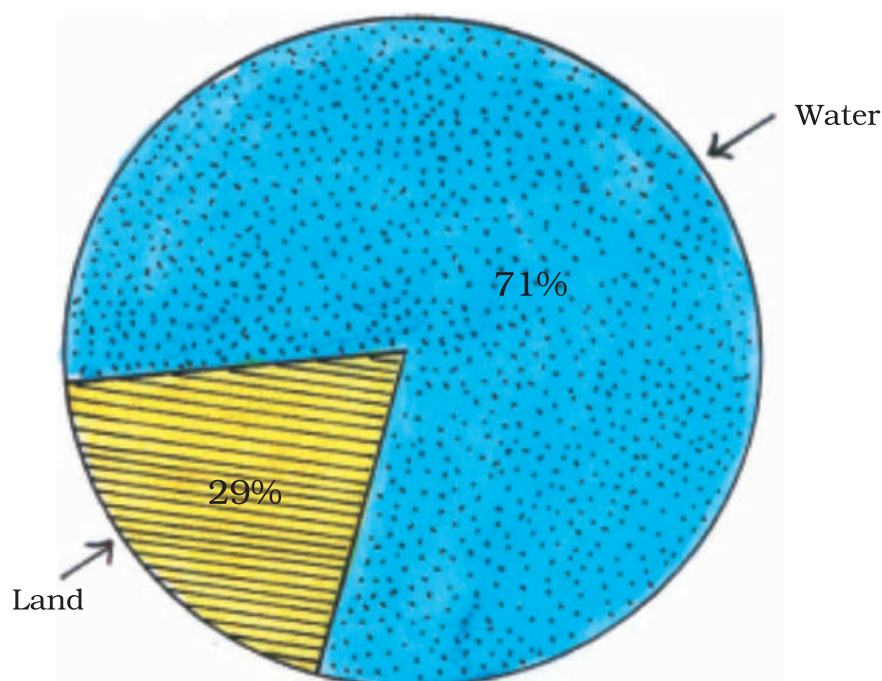


Make a list of the things that bears dew in the winter season.





There is unequal distribution of water and land on the Earth. The  $\frac{2}{3}$  of the earth's surface is covered by saline water. It means that the 71% of the total area is covered by water and remaining 29% is only land area of the earth. The great water regions are called oceans. Small water bodies are called seas. It means a huge water body is called ocean, and sea are the limited portion of the water. Arabian sea and Bay of Bengal are two seas in Indian ocean.



**Design 6.1** Distribution of land and water on the earth.

There are five oceans on the earth. The Pacific ocean the Atlantic ocean, the Indian ocean, the Arctic ocean and the Antarctic oceans. All these oceans are inter connected. Water of oceans mix with each other. The following is the areas under these oceans:

Oceans	Area (In crore Sq. Kilometers)
1. Pacific Ocean	16.6
2. Atlantic Ocean	8.2
3. Indian Ocean	7.3
4. Arctic Ocean	1.3
5. Antarctic Ocean	---

**Pacific ocean** is the largest and deepest ocean. It is so deep that world's highest peak, Mt. Everest can be dipped in this ocean. The Atlantic ocean is almost half the size of Pacific ocean.

The name of the **Indian Ocean** is named after our country India. India being a subcontinent and the ocean is in the south of India, the name of ocean is derived from the nation. The smallest ocean is the **Arctic Ocean**, the Ice Land. It remains frozen throughout the year because it is in the extreme north of the Earth around arctic circle. Around the south pole lies the **Antarctic Ocean** which is counted more as a continent.

The oceanic water is always saline because large quantity of mineral salt is dissolved in it.

### Fresh and Saline Water

The water on the earth surface is found in the form of rivers, canals, lakes, seas and oceans. Several mineral salts get dissolved in natural water and make it saline. These minerals are very useful for the growth of living beings, plants and trees. The water bodies get water from the different sources like, rainfall and melting of snow etc. and flowing through the rivers it reaches to the plants and other living beings. This water is Fresh Water. Some of the water that seeps in the earth gets filtered in the process and is used for domestic purposes by extracting out of earth by means of tube-wells and hand pumps.

### Fresh water

The water we get from, rainfall, melting of ice, rivers, canals, tube-wells etc. is fresh water.

The water on the earth evaporates due to the heat of the sun. The

stagnant water of Lakes, land locked water bodies, seas and oceans gets evaporated continuously and as a result, the amount of salt increase in this water. This is the reason, the common salt making is quite popular occupation along the banks of seas. The amount of salt remains more in oceans because of the carbonate consumed by fish and Marine Organism.

### The Saline Water :

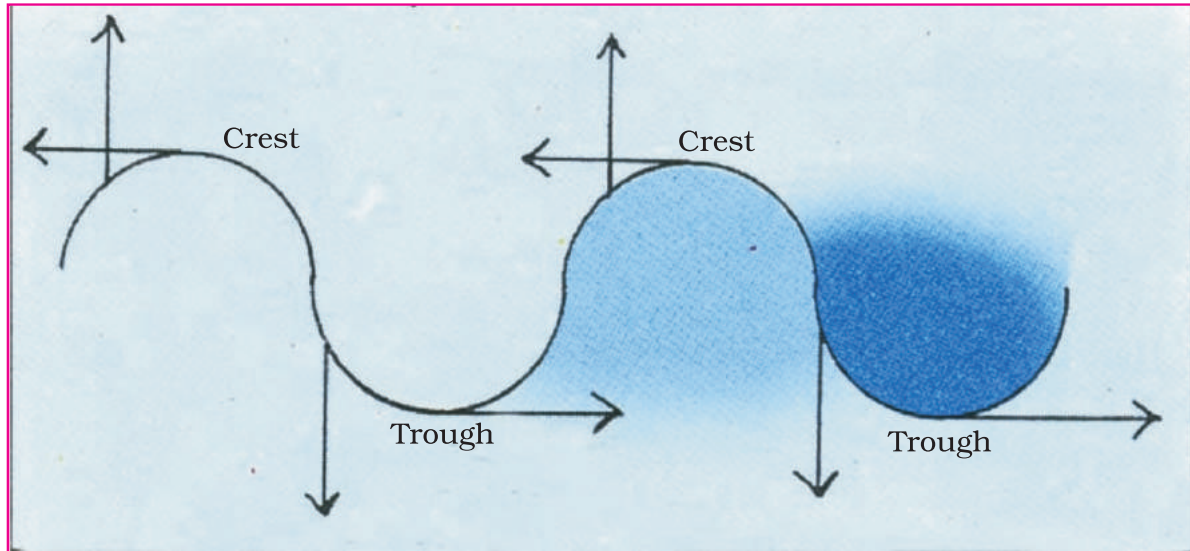
The water of lakes, land locked seas and open oceans is saline. The highest salinity is in the Dead Sea. This sea is land locked. The seas which have high rate of salinity do not let things and even human beings drown. How wonderful it is !

By standing near the bank of the ocean we can observe that the water in the oceans is always moving i.e. it is never calm and still. Its movement is its life. Ocean waters move in the form of ripples, waves, tides and Tsunami. By the wholesome movement of water, the waters of oceans mix with each other. There are three types of movements of water.

1) Waves 2) Ocean Currents 3) Tides

**1) Waves :** The water of oceans always ripples with the winds over the ocean surface. According to the change in weather, these ripples are high and sometimes these are low. At times the movement is faster and at times it is comparatively slow depending upon the waves arise in the ocean. The ripples or waves arise due to the speed of the wind blowing over the surface of oceans. The water vapours run up & down with which the water start rippling. As shown in design 6.2, upper surface of wave is called **crest** and the lower surface of wave or when the water returns almost to its original position is **trough**. When a cyclone occurs, these ocean waves turn into horrible water splashes. Sometimes they even destroy ships sailing in the oceans. The waves erode the coastal areas and transport the rock material to the ocean floors.

**2) Ocean Currents:** When the ocean water moves in a particular direction it is called ocean current. The water in the ocean moves very systematically from one place to the other. Due to these ocean currents



**Design 6.2** Waves

the waters of all oceans mix up with each other. The speed of current can be slow or fast. Usually their speed is 2 kilometer to 10 kilometer per hour.

The ocean currents are of two types :

1. **Warm water currents**
2. **Cold water currents**

If a current flows from the equator, it carries warm effect along with. But if a current flows from polar area, it carries cold effect. In this way, warm water currents and cold water currents come into existence.

The currents going away from the equator are always warm, and coming towards equator are always cold.

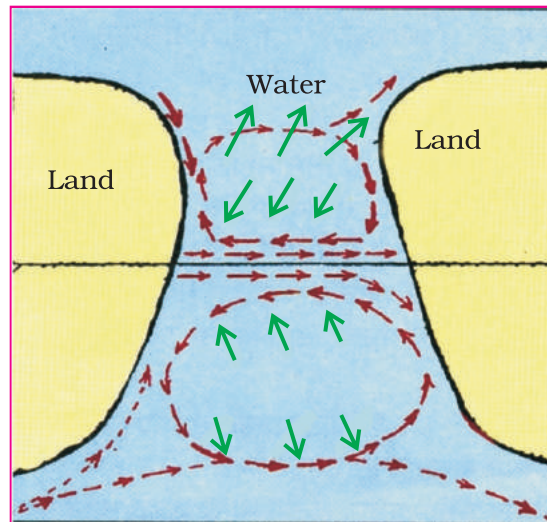
It should always be kept in mind that water of warm current is slightly warmer than the water in adjoining areas. Similarly the water of cold currents is little bit colder than that of water of nearby areas. The warm water current always flow on the upper layer of the ocean where as the cold water current flows underneath.

Why these currents move ? Who gives the form of stream to the ocean water ? Answer to these questions is with the planetary winds, that blow in a particular direction throughout the year. The trade winds and westerlies while moving in the same direction throughout the year carry



with them the ocean water along with. Therefore, ocean water also moves in the direction of the planetary winds.

The insolation of the sun is not uniform on the whole of the globe. The temperature remains high through out the year in equatorial regions but as we move away towards the poles the temperature starts decreasing. Due to the difference of the temperature and direction of winds, ocean currents originate. As Warm water which is lighter and flows on the upper surface near the equatorial region, the water from the cold areas replaces it and thus starts movement of oceanic waters.



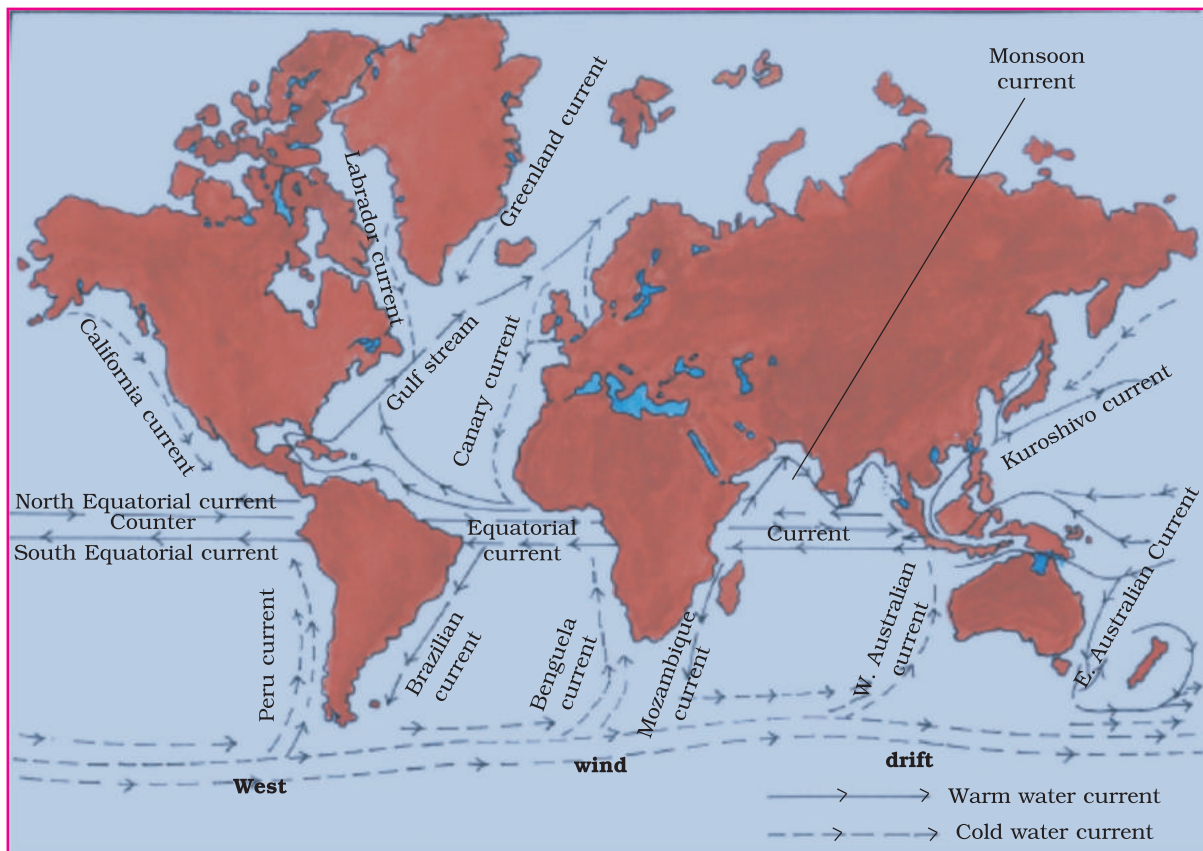
**Note :- Green arrows stand for direction of wind while brown arrows show direction of water.**

**Design 6.3** How ocean currents originate.

Besides, the prevailing or planetary winds and the difference of temperature, salinity of water is also a cause of origin of ocean currents. As all the oceans do not have same quantity of salt. The oceans with higher amount of salt have heavy water and ocean with lesser amount of salt have light water, thus these two types of water came into existence. The lighter water comes up the surface whereas the heavier water tries to flow down the surface of water. Thus the movements of ocean currents originate.

These ocean currents move along the coasts of the continents. Therefore, the shape of the continents also give them directions. The rotation of the earth also affect the speed of these currents.

Look at the map of the world. All the oceans are having water currents. Now we will study these currents according to oceans.



**Design 6.4** World map showing main ocean currents

**Ocean currents of Atlantic Ocean:** Look into the circulation of Atlantic ocean current. You will see that there are two specific circles one in the north of equator and other in the south of equator.

**North Atlantic Oceanic Circle:** The trade winds blow in equatorial regions. These winds always blow from east direction. Along with the water of ocean in north and south of equator starts moving in the same direction i.e. east to west. The equatorial warm water current flows from Africa to America. It appears to flows along the eastern coast of North America to the north west of north America. Here this is called as Gulf Stream.

The **Gulf Stream** starting from Gulf of Mexico to the Islands of Newfoundland. This is the most important warm water current of the world. Its width is 400 kilometer. Its water flows with a speed of 5 kilometer

per hour. Its warm effect affects the climate of the eastern coast of United States of America. After reaching near the islands of Newfoundland, a cold water current named as **Labrador** mixes with it. Due to the mixing of warm & cold water current a dense fog is formed over there. The Glaciers moving from the poles melt after reaching near the Gulf Stream. In this way they do not create obstruction to ships after reaching down. A cold water current from **Greenland** also mixes with it.

Now this current under the effect of westerlies moves eastward. Now it is called by the name north **Atlantic current**. This warm water currents while flowing across north west of Britain reaches the cold areas of Norway and Sweden. Due to the warm effect of this current the fisherman of Norways go away for fishing. It is also due to the warm effect of this current the ports of European countries remain open even in winter season. If this current does not flow to this area, the ports would have been frozen. From the Europe, **Canary** current flows to the south-ward. It is a cold water current which passes over the North-west coast of Africa. This current by mixing with the equatorial current, completes the cycle. In this way, this cycle is in a clock wise direction. The area enclosed by this cycle is called as '**Sargasso Sea**'.

**b) Southern Atlantic Cycle :** A definite cycle of ocean current similar to northern cycle is also in this side. This cycle flows in an anticlockwise direction. The Southern equatorial current when advances towards the east to west then it strike against the elongated part of the north America and is divided into two parts. One of the part joins with northern cycle but the other part flowing along with the coast of America and advances to the south. This is called as **Brazilian current**. A cold water current from the south comes to mix up with it. This is called as **Falkland current**. Now this current under the influence of westerlies. It is called **westwind drift**. This is a cold water current, which circulates around the whole of the Globe. The reason being from the south ward there is an open ocean therefore there is no obstruction in between. A cold water current of South Africa flows northwardly along the western coast this is called **Banguela** current. In between the north equatorial ocean current and southern equatorial there is a **counter equatorial** current that flows from the west to the east.

**Pacific ocean currents :** These ocean currents also have two types of cycles. The Northern Cycle and Southern Cycle.

**a) The Northern Cycle :** Under the influence of trade winds along the equatorial line a current flows from east to west is a equatorial ocean current. After reaching near the eastern Archipelago. There this is called by **kuroshivo current**. This is also called **Japan current**.

A cold water, Kamachatka current from the north to the south and merges with kuroshivo current. All this oceanic drainage proceeds towards the east. This is called **north pacific ocean** current. After striking against



**Design 6.5** Pacific Ocean Currents

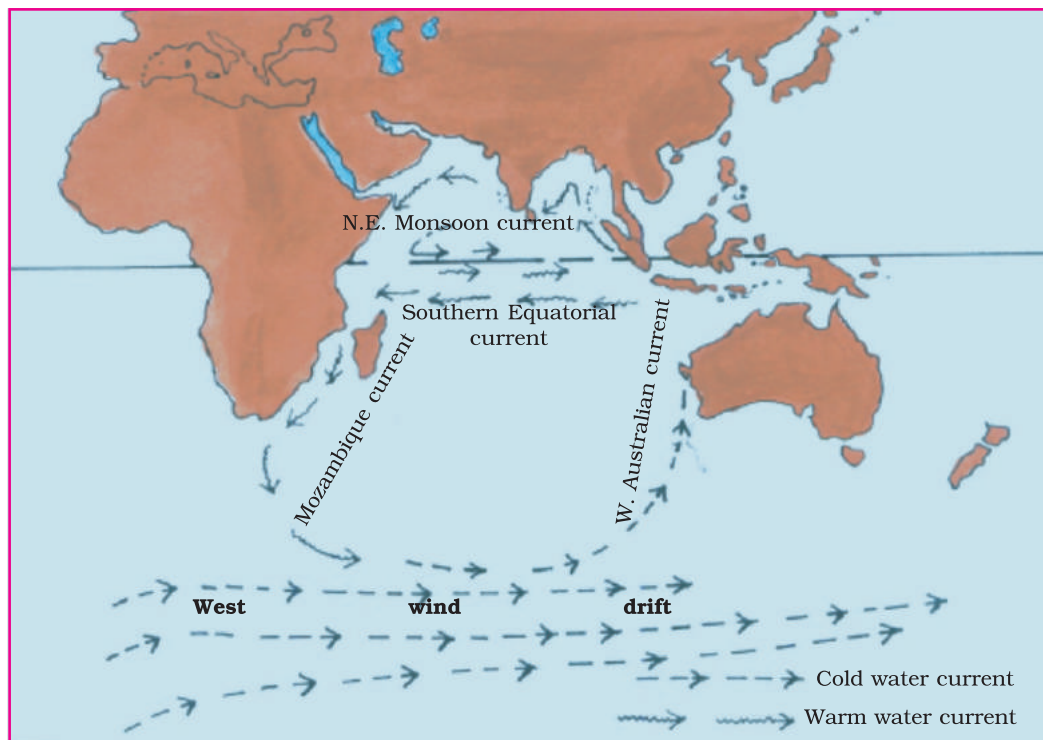


the western coast of north America it turns southward. It is called as **California current**. As it comes from polar area it is cold water current.

**The Southern Cycle:** The Southern equatorial current under the influence of trade winds proceeds from South America to the east of the Australia. This eastern Australian current when approaches to the Island of New-Zealand merges with west wind drift. Near South America one branch of this proceeds northward. Here it is called as current of **Peru**. This is also called **Humbolt current**. This is cold water current. This along with equatorial current completes its cycle. Counter equatorial current also flow in Pacific ocean.

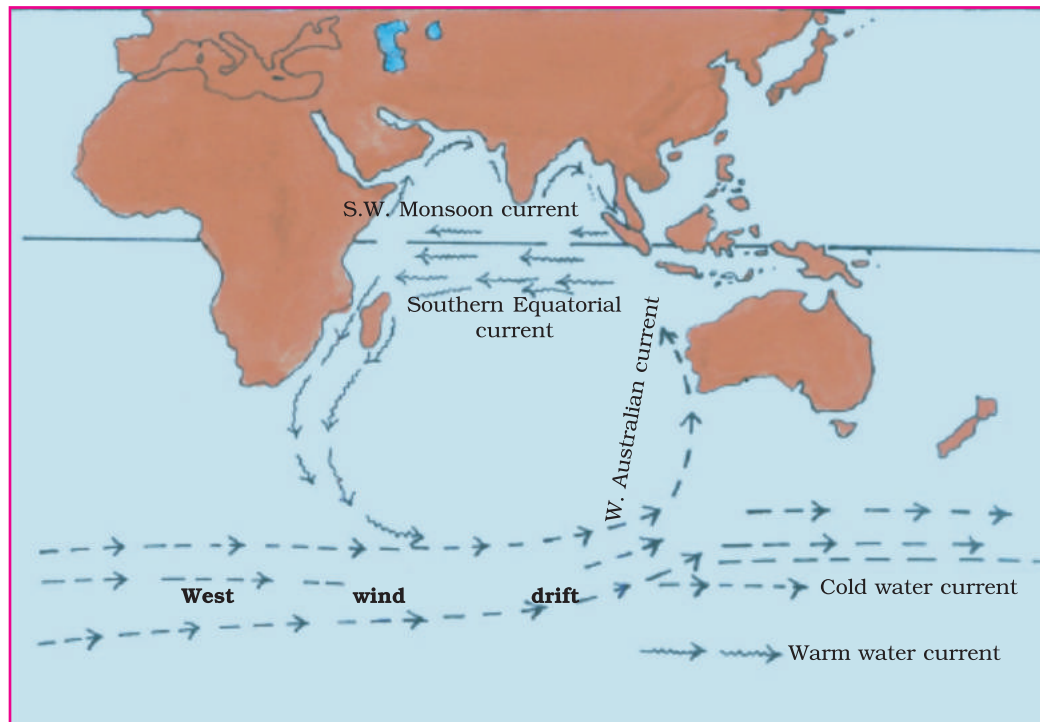
### Currents of Indian ocean

The Indian ocean currents are not so systematic and permanent as the Atlantic and Pacific ocean. The main reason of this is the seasonal winds that flow in Indian Ocean. These winds blow south west direction in summer season and north eastern direction in winter season. Due to this change the ocean currents also change their direction. In this southern hemisphere the currents are more permanent. The equatorial warm water from the eastern archipelago proceeds towards the eastern coast of Africa.



**Design 6.6** - The Ocean currents of Indian ocean in winters





**Design 6.7** - The Ocean Currents of Indian ocean in Summer

Along this coast, this current goes to southward. Here it is called **Mozambique current**. A branch of this flows from the east of Malagassi. This is known as **Agulahas current**. These two current along with west wind drift proceed toward the east from the west coast of Australia, the **western Australian cold current** after proceeding northward merges with equatorial currents.

### Effects of Currents on Climate

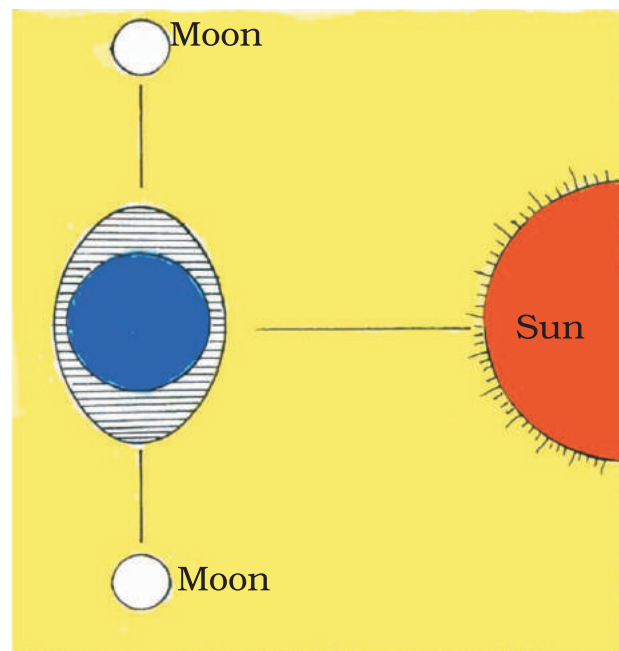
You have studied that there are two types of Ocean currents. Warm water currents and cold water currents. These currents flow along the continents and coastal areas. These currents affect the climate of the adjoining land. The warm current raise the temperature of the places adjoining them and the colder current lower down the temperature of the adjoining area.

When the warm current passes over the surface of water, these absorb enough humidity and when they approaches to the coastal areas these rain heavily. But when a cold currents pass over the water surface. It becomes more colder and dry. When it approaches to the coastal areas then it increases the coldness and dryness. Wherever in the world, the

cold currents flow their adjoining areas have been converted in to the deserts. Find out the name of these deserts. The place where the cold and warm current merges together, they produce dense fog over there. For example the cold water current of Labrador and warm water current of Gulf, merges at the east coast of the North America near Newfoundland to produce dense fog over there. In the design of ocean currents, find out the places where the warm water current and cold water current merges.

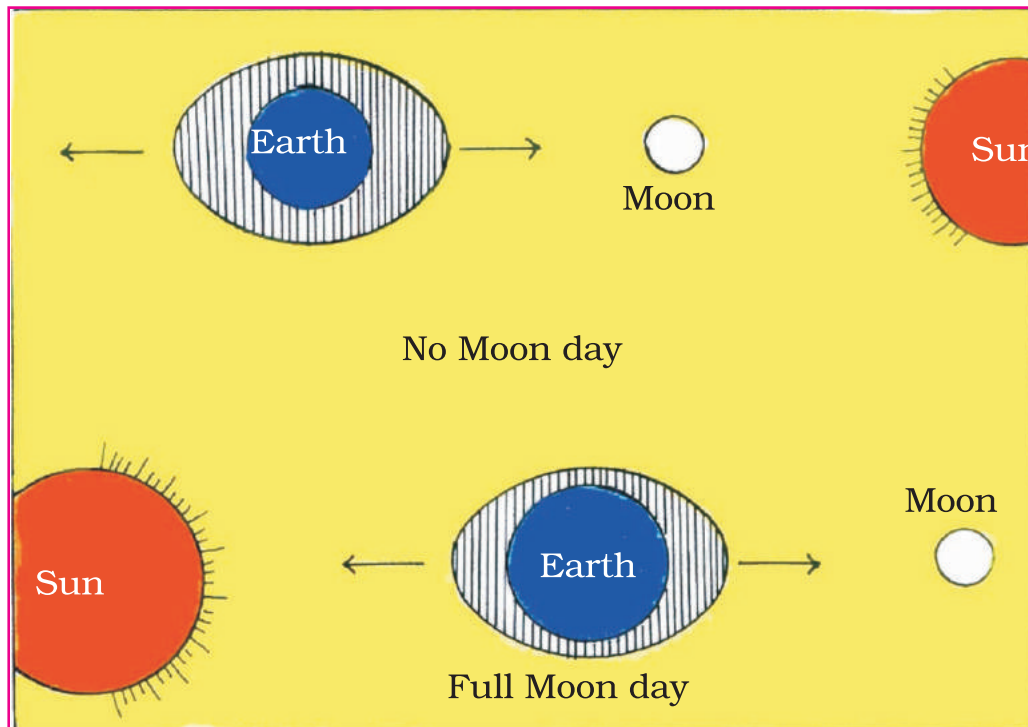
Besides climate these current also affect the oceanic shipping. The shipping is always in the direction of the currents with this their speed increase and thus less fuel is consumed. The warm water currents melts the glaciers in this way they do not create hindrance to ships.

**3. Tides :** The people living near the ocean observe that water rises and fall two times a day systematically. In the coastal areas water continuously rises for some hours. After reaching a definite height it starts falling down. This rise and fall of water repeats two times in 24 hours. The alternate rise and fall of water in oceans is called tides. When the water rises it is **high tide**, and when it falls, it is **low tide**.



**Design 6.8** Tide

There are huge oceans on the earth surface. When the moon affects the oceans by its Gravitational pull. The water rises high towards the moon. According to the Geographers and the scientists the main cause of Tide is the gravitational force of moon. Although the sun also pulls water, but it is from a too long distance and it can not make rise in ocean water. But if the pull of moon joins with sun, then rise of water will be very high. The height of the tide is not always the same. Sometimes it is more than average and sometimes it is less than average. When the tide is maximum that is called **Spring Tide**. When the water rises less than average, it is **'Neap tide.'**



**Design 6.9** Spring Tide

**Spring Tide :** During the **Spring Tide** the rise of water is maximum this happens during no moon day and Full moon day. The reason of this is that in both the phases of the sun, the moon and the earth all are in a line. In this phase the sun and the moon both pull the ocean water jointly. Due to their joint pull, the rise of water is very high. Which is called as **Spring Tide**.

**Neap Tide :** In the Neap Tide, the rise of water is lower than as usual. It is on the 7th and 21st day or the first or the last quarter phase of the moon. In this phase, the moon, earth and sun are right angles to that of the moon. The sun pulls water to its side and the moon pulls towards itself. Due to in nearness of the moon, the water rises towards moon only. But it is not as high, because the pull of sun is working on the opposite direction.

**Man and Tide :** Tides help us in many ways. Due to the tide the deposits of soil and the debris against the mouth of the river, washed away. Thus the soil do not get deposited on the harbours situated on the coastal areas, and ships can sail up to a great distance inside.

The big ships standing in the deep distant seas, keep on waiting for the high amplitude when there is rise in water, that sail into the harbours. After down loading the ships, cargo again wait for the rise, so that they move again to the seas.

The port of Kolkata on the banks of Hugali river is away from Bay of Bengal. If there were no tide in ocean, the ships could have not even reached in Kolkata harbour. Similarly the port of London is situated at the banks of Thames river. The ships also move in and out of the harbour when tide rise in the ocean.

Now it has been planned to utilize the energy of Tides to fulfill the over increasing demand of energy world over.

**4. Tsunami :** Tsunami is pronounced as soo-nah-mee. It is a Japanese word, made up of two parts **Tsu** meaning coastal and Nami means a long wave of water. The Tsunami means long waves of water striking to the coastal areas. The long waves arise due to the earthquake on the ocean floors. This is not only a single wave but a series of waves, better known as wave train. It comes one after the other, sometimes these are so intense that the water along the coast of ocean moves with a speed of 800 km per hour. At some places the water rises upto 100 feet and flows with highest speed. In coastal areas there is a great loss to man, animals and property, as things are washed away with Tsunami.



**Design 6.10** Destruction due to Tsunami



## Case Study of the Tsunami struck on 26th December 2004

On December 26, 2004, a most powerful Tsunami occurred on the coast of Indian ocean. This deadly Tsunami was caused by a severe earthquake of the of magnitude of 9.0 on the richter scale on ocean floor. The epicentre was west coast of Indonesia and with in hours the killer waves brought devastation in 11 countries falling in and around Indian ocean. Due to Tsunami many people drowned, washed away and many houses were illiminated. The beaches of Africa to Thailand were heavily affected.

According to the estimate of the Government of India, the loss due to this giant Tsunami was up to thousands of crores. Out of the states of India Tamilnadu suffered the most, followed by Kerela, Andhra Pradesh and Pudduchery. More than 200,000 (2 lakh) people were killed and many more were rendered homeless.



### I. Answer the following question in approximately 1-15 words.

1. Why does the Ocean water salty?
2. Why there is a dense fog near Newfoundland?
3. Write down the main ocean currents of south Atlantic ocean cycle.
4. Explain the route of Gulf Stream current.
5. Write down the main ocean currents of North Atlantic Oceans cycle.
6. What do you understand by Tsunami ?

### II. Answer the following question in approximately 50-60 words.

1. What is the difference between Spring Tide and Neap Tide ?
2. Differentiate between warm water ocean current and cold water ocean current.
3. Why are the ocean currents of Indian ocean not so definite and systematic ?



4. Give reasons, why are the western harbours of Britain remain open even in winter season where as the eastern harbours of north America situated at the same latitude are remain frozen ?
5. Tide is very useful for ships. How ?
6. Why a spring tide occurs in full moon and no moon days ?
7. How does the Gulf Stream affects the climate of Europe ?
8. What is 'Sargasso Sea' and how does it form ?
9. What is the difference between the ocean waves and the ocean currents.
10. Write down a case study of a place that is affected by Tsunami.

**III. Answer the following question in approximateley in 125-130 words.**

1. Why do the ocean currents flow ? How do they affect the climate of any country.
2. Explain with illustration on the world map, Atlantic ocean currents.
3. Explain with illustration on the world map, Pacific Ocean currents.
4. How does the Tide occur ? Justify with diagram.
5. What are ocean currents ? What are the causes of their origin.



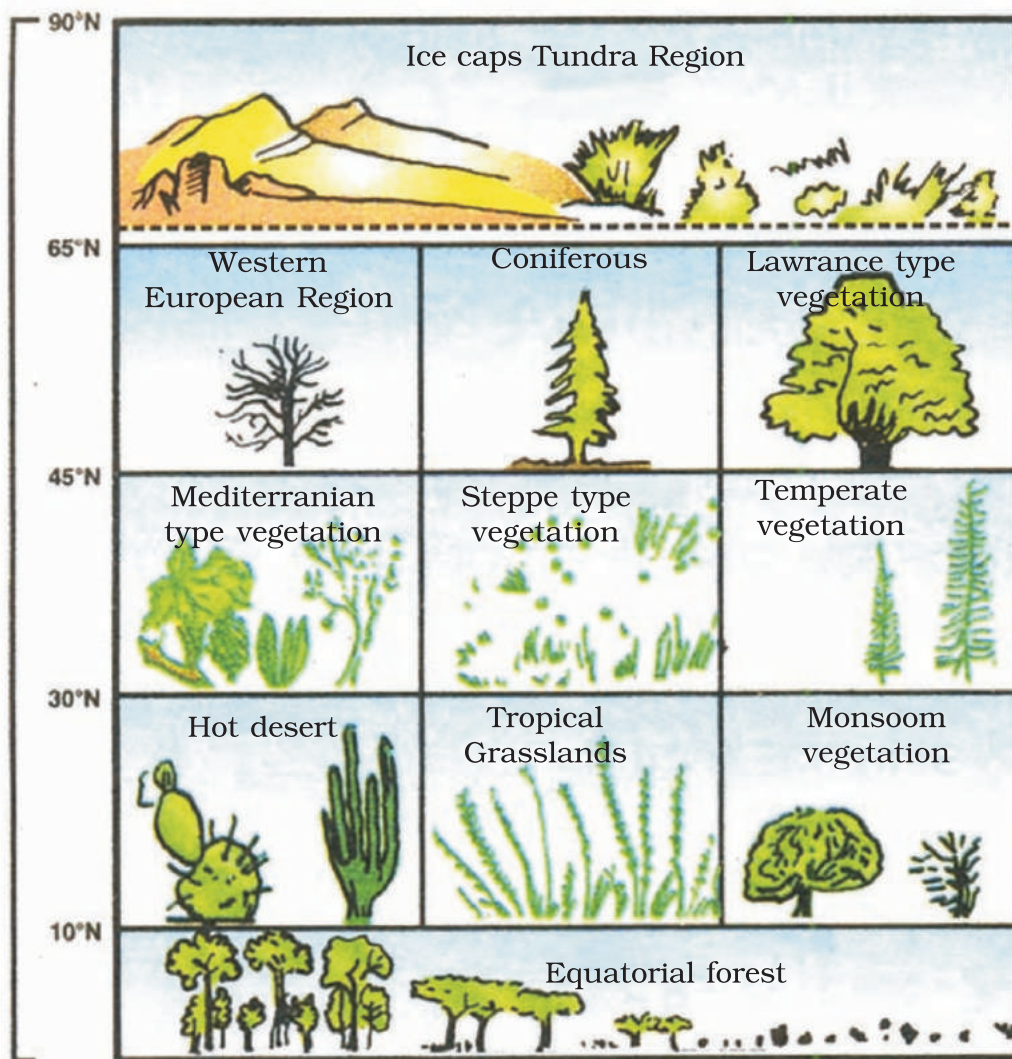


The natural vegetation of a place are the plants, trees and herbs that grow itself, without efforts of mankind. The natural vegetation shows the total effect of topography, type of soil and climate of a place. The natural vegetation is a most valuable resource, besides providing different types of wood. We get bamboos, grass for paper making, gum, resin, turpentine, lac, bark for leather colouring, medicinal plants and bushes from woods. A number of industries are based on forest wood, besides timber, it is used for making furniture, sports goods, ships, railway coaches, paper, plywood and boxes for packing purposes.

Forests are helpful to us indirectly also. Forests play a vital role in processes of atmosphere. Trees absorb carbon dioxide and release oxygen to the atmosphere. They help in occurrence of rainfall thus check the temperature rise, check floods and soil erosion and help in the seepage of rainwater into the ground. Forests also check the spread of deserts and provide habitat to birds and animals.

About 30 percent of land area of the world is under forests. Some countries are quite rich in this resource and forests play a vital role in their economy. North America, South America and Russia have vast areas under forests whereas Europe, Asia and Africa have lesser forest cover.

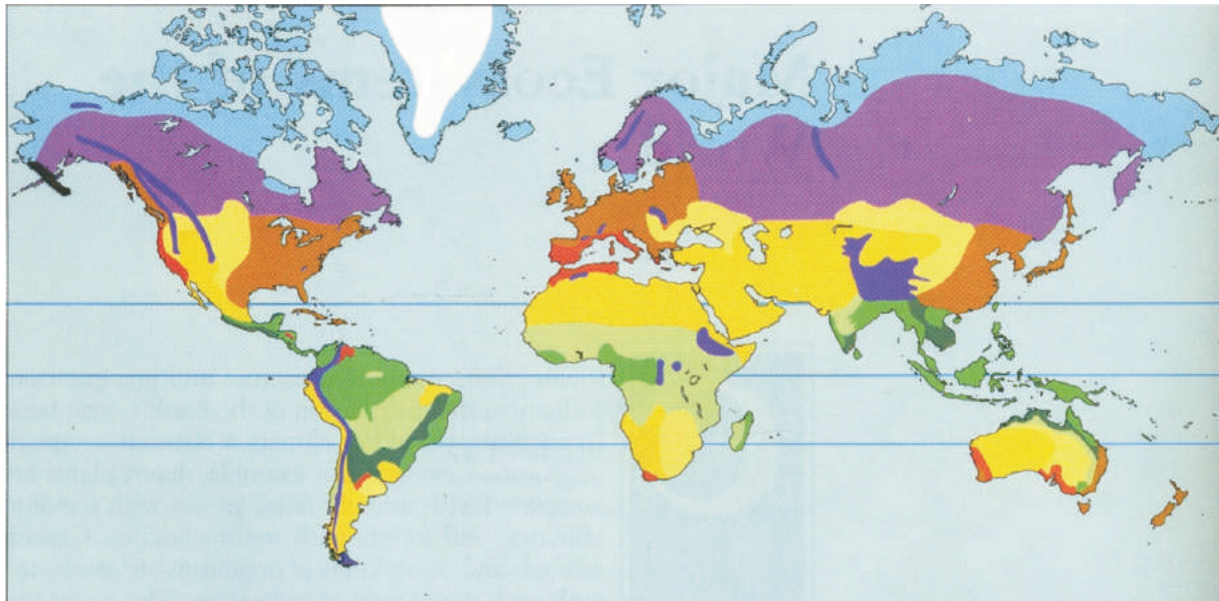
Increasing population of the world is adversely affecting the forests. Man has been cutting the forests to obtain land for cultivation since the pre-historic era. As a result, area under forests is decreasing drastically. If natural vegetation and forests are continuously destroyed with present speed, time will come soon when the whole world would turn into desert. It is therefore, urgent to conserve the forests and plan afforestation while checking deforestation.



**Design 7.1** – The types of Vegetation on the earth according to the Latitudes.

After observing the above design, you will find that the distribution of natural vegetation is not the same through-out on the earth. There is a great variation in the distribution of vegetation. With the change in climate there is difference in the type of vegetation, type of trees, density and size of the forests. Due to the variation of climate at different latitudes the vegetation cover also varies. Natural vegetation of the world can be divided into three major types i.e.

1. Forests
2. Grasslands
3. Desert Shrubs



Polar Ice	Taiga coniferous forests	Equatorial or tropical forests	Tropical grasslands
Tundra	Temperate forest	Mediterranean vegetation	Desert vegetation
Mountainous area	Tropical Deciduous forests	Steppe grasslands	

**Design 7.2** - World map showing natural vegetation

## Forests

Amount of annual rainfall, its seasonal distribution and temperature affect the types of forests. On the basis of the geographical conditions, the forests are further divided into three types.

I. Equatorial type of forests II. Monsoon Type of forest III. The Coniferous (conical) type of forests

### 1. Equatorial type of Forest

These forests cover approximately  $10^{\circ}$  north and  $10^{\circ}$  south of the Equator and are known as evergreen forests. Due to the continuous high temperature and rainfall, the dense forests grow in this area. The shoots of the tree are so much intermingled with each other that they form a canopy of trees which does not allow the sunlight to fall on the earth's surface. There are different types of trees in this region but these are not useful from economic point of view. The main reason is that it is not easy to pass through the forests and also they cannot be cut.



The large portion of South America, Central Africa, South East Asia, Madagaskar are covered with this type of forests. Small areas of Australia, Central America are covered under these forests. These type of forests are called as '**Selwas**' in the Amazon basin of Brazil in South America.

Lately this type of forests are considered to be **skyscrapers**. The uppermost layer of these forests comprise of 70 metres high trees. On this layer of the trees both light and thin trees are available. Below this is canopy type storey. Which is formed by the intermingling of shoots of trees with each other. A small amount of sunlight is available in this layer of forests, which is useful for fruits and flowers. Below this is a shadow area, in this vines are clinging around the trees and also interwoven with each other. The vines which cannot survive without sunlight grow high and come out to have sunlight. On the lowermost layer of the forest there is shadow area because sunlight does not reach the ground. Therefore the ground floor is covered with decaying leaves, insects and worms and forests are inaccessible. That is the reason that these forests are not economically useful while government efforts are on to develop and these regions and make use of forests.

## II. Monsoon or Deciduous forests

These forests are found in sub-tropical latitudes where the rain is mostly confined to one season. These forests have broad leaved trees which grow at places where monsoon rainfall is sufficient. The season, in which there is no rainfall, these trees shed their leaves. That is why these forests are called Deciduous forests. Such forests are very useful economically, but simultaneously the land under these forests is being used for the cultivation of crops after clearing the forests. These forests are less dense as compared to equatorial type of forests and are more accessible also. We get timber from these forests for houses and for fuel.

## III. The Coniferous type of forests

These forests are grown in temperate regions. The coniferous forests are also called evergreen forests. In Eurasia the forests are known as '**Taiga**'. From utility point of view these are the most important and precious trees. These forests includes soft wood of Chir, fir and spruce trees, which is used for making paper.



## 2. Grasslands

There are two types of grasslands : Tropical grasslands and Temperate grasslands.

### i. Tropical grasslands

Tropical grasslands are found at  $10^{\circ}$ - $30^{\circ}$  latitudes in Northern and Southern hemisphere. These grasslands are also called as '**Savanna**' grasslands. These are called by different names in different regions.

In Africa these are called Parkland. In Venezuela these are called Llanos. In Brazil these are called Campos.

This grass grows upto 5 metre high and after drying, it turns quite hard. There are also small sized trees scattered in these grasslands. Mostly herbivorous and carnivorous animals are reared on these grasslands.

### ii. Temperate grasslands

Such grasslands are found in temperate zone. Because of low rainfall regions, the grass is not very high but it is soft and densely grown thus it is useful for animal grazing. The grasslands are also known by different names in different regions.

In Eurasia these are called as Steppes. In North America these are called as Prairies. In South America these are called as Pampas. In South Africa these are called as Veld. In Australia these are called Downs.

## Desert Vegetation

There are two types of deserts on the earth : Hot Desert and Cold Desert.

### i. Hot Deserts

Sahara and Kalahari in Africa, Arab Iran desert, Thar desert in Indo-Pakistan, Atacama in Southern America, Southern California and Mexico in North America, Eastern Australian desert in Australia are the hot deserts of the world.

Due to high temperature and low rainfall, the vegetation is scanty. Only thorny shrubs, cactus, small herbs and grass grow in such deserts. The nature has made this vegetation to adapt to the hot and dry weather of these areas. The roots of these plants are long and thick enough to secure water from the deep. The bark of the plant is thick and the leaves have thick foliage and are very smooth, so that minimum water may escape during the transpiration.

## **ii. Cold desert**

These deserts are located mostly in the northern most latitude of Canada and Eurasia. (The combination of Europe and Asian continents is known as Eurasia).

Most of the times during a year, these areas are covered with snow. When the snow melts for a month or so colourful flowering plants grow. In the northern areas small grass i.e. lican is grown. The desert type of vegetation is not of great use economically.

## **Conservation of forest**

The forests are of great importance to us because they fulfill our several needs. The great part of the timber from forests is used for fuel. Out of total usable timber 50% is used as fuel and 33% is used for housing purposes and rest of it is used for other purposes i.e. for making paper, railway boggies, sleeper, rayon etc. With the increase in population, The consumption of wood is also increasing, but on the other hand the area under forest is decreasing. Therefore the stress should be laid on the conservation of forests and planting new trees.

Sometimes fire causes great loss to forests. A specific attention should be given regarding the forests. Uncautiousness and carelessness regarding the forests should not be adopted. The cutting of trees should be systematically and besides new trees should be planted simultaneously. It should be kept in mind that the trees should not be destroyed due to mites and diseases. Maximum trees should be planted on the vacant space left along the footpaths, canals, rivers, roads and railway lines. The consumption of timber as fuel should be decreased and alternate

sources of fuel should be adopted i.e. LPG cylinder chullas, solar energy chullas, gobar gas etc. In housing alternate of wood should be encouraged.

### **Wild Life**

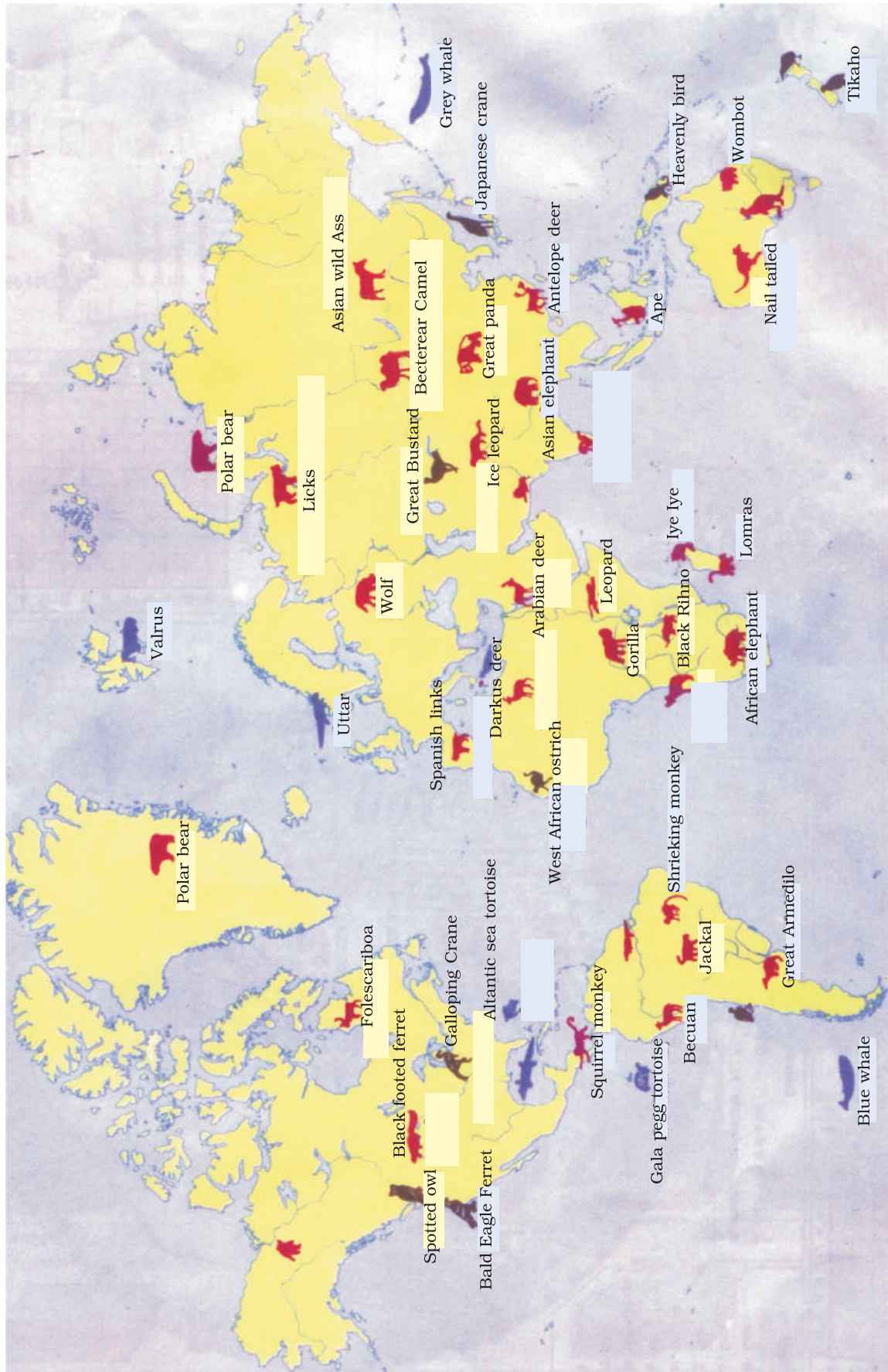
With the destruction of forests the number of wild animals are also decreasing at a great speed. The man has been hunting wild animals along with cutting the forests. Man has been hunting animals for the sake of meat, feathers and hides. As a result some of the species of wild animals have gone extinct and some of these are endangered to be extinct.

To maintain the ecological balance the survival of these animals is necessary. By clearing the forests and hunting of these animals, man has brought imbalance to the ecological balance. The nature has created biosphere in such a way that one animal depends upon the other, as small animal is a food for the big animal and the carnivorous depend upon herbivorous animals. In this way absence of even single particular species will create disorder of physical environment. Think a while, if the number of carnivorous animals like lion, leopard is more than the number of herbivorous animals, do you know what will be the result ? There would be an imbalance of ecological balance and the carnivorous would start eating human beings. If the situation is reversed the number of lions and leopards is less than the number of herbivorous animals. Due to over grazing of grass, a time will come when a lush green grasslands will turn into barren deserts. Therefore, soil erosion will be more, it means the disorder of balance. To maintain the ecological balance, efforts should be made.

Wild animals are also a wealth of a country. For this purpose, in many countries hunting is prohibited. There should be strict law to check hunting in India. It has been felt that it is very necessary to protect wild animals. As many of the species have been extincted earlier and many of the rest are endangered to be extincted.

The number of rhinoceros, leopard, lion etc. animals have been decreased. The national parks have been established in the United States of America, India and other countries. A natural environment has been provided to protect these wild animals in these parks. There are 20 national parks in India in different parts of the country Corbett, Shivpuri, Cannari,





**Design 7.3** The animal species that are endangered to be extinct

Rajdevga, Gir etc. are some of the famous national parks of India. Besides there are reserved centres for the animals and birds. 'Chhatbir' is one of these centres in Punjab. The Savanna grasslands in Africa is one of the largest home of wild animals. The tourists from distant places in world come to visit these places. Zebra, giraffe, antelope, stag, deer, lion, leopard, tiger, elephants, wild buffalo, rhinoceros and different species of animals and insects are present in these regions.



**I. Give answer to these questions in approximately 1-15 words.**

1. What do you understand by natural vegetation ?
2. In how many types natural vegetation can be divided ?
3. Which are the goods we get from forests ?
4. How do the forest help us indirectly ?
5. What will be the effect of the development of forests ?
6. How man is disturbing the ecological balance ?
7. Name the local names of Tropical Grasslands.
8. Write about the vegetation of cold deserts

**II. Answer the following questions in about 50-60 words.**

1. Write about the equatorial type of forest.
2. Which are the forests that are economically useful ? Explain.
3. Why are the monsoon forests called deciduous forests.
4. Write about the temperate grasslands.
5. Write about the hot desert vegetation.
6. Why is it necessary to conserve forests ?

**III. Answer the following questions in about 125-130 words.**

1. Write in detail about the natural vegetation.
2. Write about the care and protection of wild animals. Describe the role of wild animals in ecological balance.



**IV. Show the following on the world map**

1. Sahara desert vegetation
2. Llanos Grasslands
3. Pampas Grasslands
4. Selwas Forests



Prepare a list of various types of trees grown in your school compound. Plant a few sapplings also, with help of your teacher.





Human environment is an important component of the whole environment. Only human beings have the quality to adapt according to the environment. Due to this quality man has access to the inaccessible places. During this, he has to pass through different stages. Previously man was not stuck to only one place, but he wandered forest to forest in search of fruits. That is why he did not have the permanent place to live. The man was like a nomad at that time. Slowly he started settling down on one place and started cultivating crops. He felt further need to settle down permanently with the industrial revolution and people started living at one place only. Man inculcated the habit of helping each other. In this way man learnt how to lit fire, started clothing himself and made houses to live in.

Previously man started living on the places where he could fulfill his day to day needs easily. For example, man started living along the river valley. There are many reasons, i.e. water for drinking is easily available in these areas. Secondly, due to fertile soil cultivation was very easy, as with a less effort one could have a good production. In this way man started living in from the thatched roof huts to mud houses, from mud houses to pucca houses. Multistoryed and sky scrapper have come in to existence now-a-days.

With the development of professional activities, the man has been shifting from river-valley side to industrial area where the facilities are more. People are also shifting from rural to urban areas. The following are the factors that affect the settlements.

1. **Availability of water :-** The people like to live on the places where the water is easily available. This is the reason the most of the civilizations developed along river-valley i.e. most of the people had

been living in Indus valley civilization. After escavation of some places, evidence of the Kachcha/Pucca houses are found by the archeologists.

2. **Topography** : Topography plays an important role in the establishment of settlements. The area with plain topography always act as a great facility of habilitation. In the rugged topography, there are less number of settlements because of the lack of transport and communication. It is difficult to cultivate crops in these areas. So far it is difficult to construct houses in these areas. On the plain area, it is easier to construct road and lay railway lines for transportation. Secondly it is easy to cultivate crops and it is easier to transport agricultural products to other places. This is the reason that big cities, metropolitans and cosmopolitans developed usually on plain areas. For example, many important cities developed in the plains of northern India.
3. **Natural beauty** : Many cities have been developed due to their natural beauty. These cities have been developed because of their importance as tourism point of view. Because tourism industry is one of the major industries now-a-days. Many people have been employed in this industry. The people from all over the world come to enjoy the beauty of the places like Kashmir, Goa etc. These are the places that have been developed because of their natural beauty.
4. **Means of Transportation and Communication** : The means of transportation and communication also plays an important role in the development of a place. By the the development of means of transportation and communication, it is easier to transport people and goods. Economic as well as social development is also possible due to efficient means of transport. Sometimes we feel, a product of neighbourhood is required far away and more profit can be earned. The areas which find more of such activities become major cultural and commercial centres. Besides, the cities that are located along the main roads, railway lines and ports also become important from cultural and commercial point of view. Technical advancement in means of transport and communication has also taken place. In the previous years people used pet animals as means of transport.

With the technical advancement, the transportation has become more technical and faster. The whole world has become a global village while various means of transport play diverse roles in economic and other types of development.

**Road-ways :** This facility has been provided from door to door. It is easier and cheaper to construct road than to lay railway lines. As far mountainous areas are concerned roads have also been constructed there but it is difficult to lay out railway lines.

**Railways :** The important aspect of railways is that these carry a large quantity of goods and large number of passengers. First of all, coal had been used in steam engines to run trains. At present trains are run by electric and diesel engines. The railway network is not only on the surface of the earth but it has been developed underground also, parts of railway network have been layed out over the bridges also. These are known as metro and sub-way railway services. In Delhi and Mumbai it has become popular recently.

In Europe and North America, railway network is widely spread. Now, railways have been layed out along the coastal areas of the continents. The railways of Soviet Union connect Leningrad to Valadivastic. This railway line is called as Trans-Siberian Railway'. This is the longest railway line in the world. There is great importance of rails in Japan, Maximum number of passengers travel on Japanese rails. High speed rails have been manufactured in Japan and France.

The bullet Train of Japan runs at the speed of 500 kilometer per hour.

**Water ways :** As we already know that man started living along the river side first of all. He got involved in fishing. Then he started travelling from one corner of the river to the other with the help of boats. It means he started transport practices through water. Now-a-days, the oceans, seas, rivers, canals lakes etc. are used by means of transport. The ships, steamer boats etc. are bowing through these and cargo and people are shipped through these. The adventurous people have completed their

voyages through these means of transport. Now, ships are engaged in large scale commercial activities.

### **Important water ways of the world :**

- (i) **North Atlantic Ocean Water Way :** This water way is busiest one which connects western Europe with United States of America and Canada. The maximum trade is conducted through this water way. Dream ship Titanic also used this water way but could not reach its destination in 1912.
- (ii) **The Pacific Ocean Water Way :** This water way connects north and south America with Asia and Australia.
- (iii) **Cape – Water Way :** This water way was discovered by Vasco da Gama in 1498. This water way connects European countries and America with southern Asia, Australia and New Zealand. With the construction of Suez canal the importance of this water way in terms of traffic, has been decreased.
- (iv) **Suez Canal Water Way :** The Suez canal connects Mediterranean ocean sea and Red Sea. This water way connects the European countries with the countries of the southern Asia, Australia and West Africa.
- (v) **Panama Canal :** This canal has been constructed in Panama Republic. This canal connects the Atlantic ocean and Pacific ocean. This canal connects western Europe and Eastern United States of America with western United States of America and Eastern Asia.

**The important ports :** The North Atlantic ocean water way is the busiest waterway and constantly engaged in the shipping transportation. The important ports of India are – Kolkata, Chennai, Kochin, Marmagao, Kandla and Vishakhapatnam. These ports connect India with the rest of the world. Thus, we can say these oceans do not separate the continents from one another but actually these are the bridge between two continents that connects one continent with the other.

**The Internal water ways :** The large rivers and lakes also act as water ways. For example, Ganga-Brahmaputra river and lakes of Kerala in India work as water ways. The water ways are also used in the other



countries of the world i.e. the Danube river of Europe – Connects the middle and southern Europe to Black Sea. Yangtze Kiang river of China – connect places internally, Amazon river of Southern America, five lakes of Northern America that connects U.S.A. with Canada etc.

**Airways :** Aeroplanes are also an important means of transport. First of all the Wright Brothers of America made a flying machine in 1903. At last the Aeroplane came into existence.

Airways is the fastest means of transportation but costlier also. Now-a-days approximately all of the countries of world are inter connected through airways. Thus, world has become a 'Global Village'. Travelling through aeroplane saves a plenty of time. Therefore aeroplane have been very popular now-a-days. There are largest airports all over the world. London, Paris, Moscow, Tokio, Dubai etc. are the largest airports of the world.

Airways plays an important role in India. Many of the cities of India are inter-connected through Indian airlines. Vayudoot and some private airways connect. The International flights like, Air India and Indian Airlines of India are engaged in carrying passengers to the big cities of world, Amritsar, Delhi, Kolkata and Chennai are important airports of India.

**Pipelines/Electric Grid :** Through the pipelines, oil and gas is being transported and electricity is being transported through the electric Grid.

**Means of Communication :** Besides transportation communication network also played an important role in increasing great link between people. Through which a message of country can be conveyed to many people and country and all over the world at one time. For example, through internet we can be contacted to the world while sitting in one corner of the world. This is also a cheapest communication means. Through the Cyber network services, you can get knowledge about any corner of the world and get guidelines regarding education and any type of knowledge etc. Besides, postal services, telegram, telephone, mobile phone, radio, magazine, newspapers are also best means of communication.



**I. Write down the answers of the following questions in approximately 1-15 words :**

1. How does agriculture affect human settlement ?
2. Where did people live, first of all ?
3. How does a topography of a place affect the development of human settlement of a place ?
4. How are roadways important ?

**II. Write down the answers of the following questions in approximately 50-60 words :**

1. Write down the importance of railways while explaining them.
2. Write about the important waterways/ocean routes of the world.
3. Write about the internal waterways ?
4. World has become a Global Village with the development of Airways, illustrate the fact with example.
5. Explain various waterways of the world and name seaports of India.
6. Which are the means of communication, what is the advantage of their development.
7. Write in detail about Suez Canal.

**III. Write the answer to these question in 125-130 words :**

1. What are the factors that affect the development of human settlement ?
2. Explain in detail about the water ways.
3. What contribution has the means of transportation towards the development of human settlement.



With the help of Atlas and the Teacher :

1. Show the Suez canal and Panama canal on the world map.
2. Show important airways on the world map.

...



In this lesson we will study about the inter-relationship of man and environment. The changes in the elements of environment affect economic activities of man. In this lesson we will study each case of following physical regions :

- 1) Life in deserts
- 2) Life in tropical and subtropical regions
- 3) Life in warm temperate regions.

**Life in Deserts :** The deserts are the regions with less rainfall to no rainfall at all. It means the rainfall is not enough that can support vegetation, plants, trees and agriculture. There is extreme type of climate in these areas. There is great range of temperature between days and nights. The temperature rises upto  $50^{\circ}\text{C}$  during the day and falls to  $15^{\circ}$  celsius during night. Therefore the days are extremely hot and nights are pleasant during summer season. Some places in deserts are such that do not have rainfall for years together. Thus the earth crust or soil is fully dry. Thus no rainfall and dusty storms, With upper fertile crust eroded away. Therefore there is no vegetation. The deserts covers the  $1/7^{\text{th}}$  part of the land area of the earth.

There are two types of deserts :

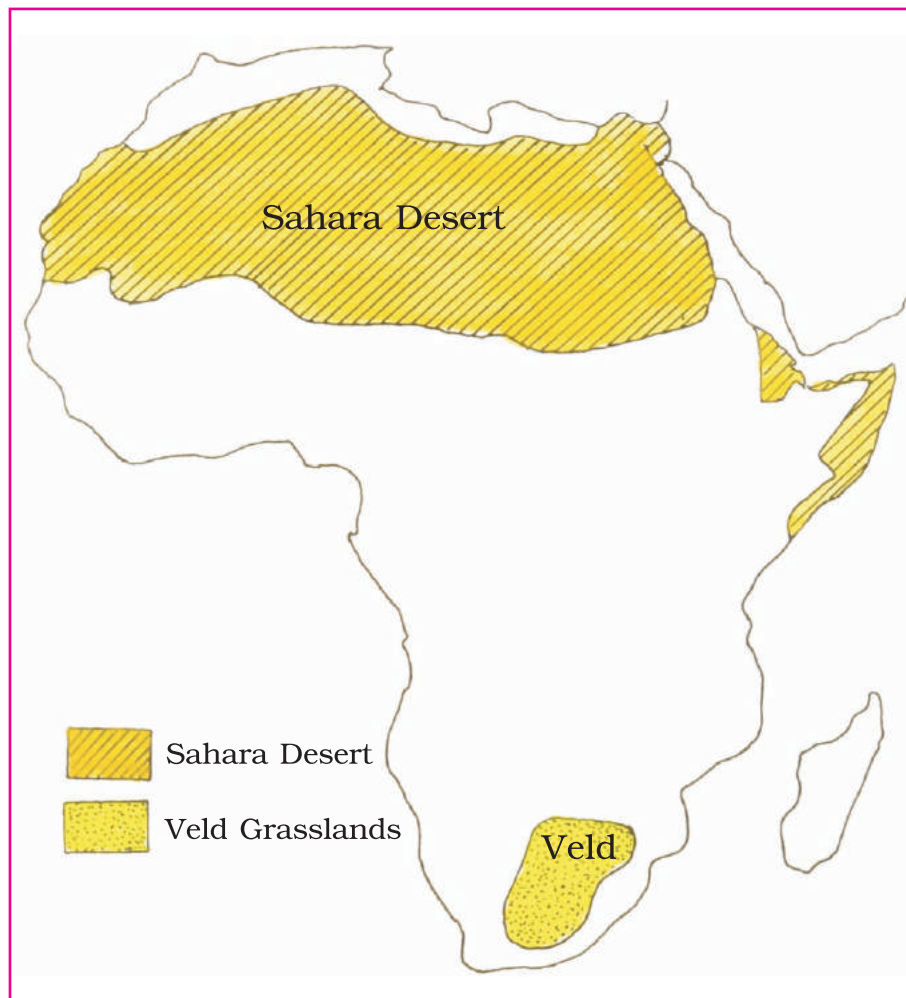
- (i) Hot deserts (ii) Cold deserts.

**Hot deserts :** These deserts extends upto  $23^{\circ}$  north and south latitudes of both the hemispheres. The hot deserts of northern hemisphere are: Sahara, Arab, Thar, California, Arizona, Mexico.

The deserts of southern hemisphere are : Atacama, Kalahari, Western Australia.

In this lesson we will study the biggest hot desert of the world Sahara.

**Sahara Desert :** This desert is located in Africa. Look at the extension of this desert, how big it is ! The length of this desert is 5600 kilometre from Red Sea to Atlantic Ocean and average width is 2000 kilometre. The sand dunes are the special physical feature of this region. The major part of this region is made up of shifting sand dunes. It means, this soil of these sand dunes is so dry and loose, the same dunes shift in the direction of the wind flow. That is why, these are called shifting sand dunes.



**Design 9.1** Africa : Sahara desert and veld grasslands

## 1. Climate :

The climate of Sahara desert is extremely hot and dry. The temperature rises upto  $40^{\circ}$  to  $45^{\circ}$  celsius in summers. The highest temperature has been measured as  $58^{\circ}\text{C}$  at the place of Arizona in Sahara desert.



## 2. Vegetation :

The vegetation is scanty. Thorny plants (cactus), thorny bushes, date and palm trees etc. grow there. The date when ripe turns into dark brown colour. Both man and animal eat them. The leaves of these are used as fodder for animal. Sometime these are also used for making roofs of the houses. Date is the important tree of the region. The wine is prepared from their plants. Olive, apricot etc. are grown under the groves of date trees.

The deserts are known for their lifeless habitat. But it is not so. No doubt, the water is considered to be an important factor for living. Here we can understand the importance of relationship of landforms and water. As for example the high lands and on the slopes, the water table is very low. Therefore no particular type of vegetation is grown over there. Down the sloping area, where the water collects, plants and animals are available. Their adaptation to environment in desert area, is a conspicuous feature of plants and animals. As in deserts, the plants are deep rooted and with thin leaves, sometimes these leaves are in the form of spikes only. Due to their long deep root, it can absorb water from the deep underground water. Due to their thin leaves, the transpiration is much less.

## 3. Human Settlements :

The human settlements are also usually developed around the water bodies. These water bodies are called Oasis which may be very big and sometimes small also. In a small Oasis, there is a grove of date trees around a well, which act as rest houses for the travellers. In large oasis agriculture is done, wheat, sugar beat, maize, barley, beans, onion, tobacco etc. are grown. Now, the people have started constructing thick walled houses with small windows in desert regions. This is done so to avoid extreme heat. People have made caves in soft rocked area where animals and people live. For long travel people use tumblers that are made of goat or camel skin. The water remains cool in these containers.

## 4. Animal Life :

A camel is the most important animal of such regions. It is a thick skinned animal, which can tolerate bad weather. The special feature of

the camel is that they can store water for a long time and for days together they do not need to drink water. Feet of a camels are paddy which help them walk smoothly on the sand while the hump on their back is like store of water which helps them to walk for a long distance without water. Actually hump is made of hydroganic substances which reacting with oxygen, produce water. That is why camel is known as '**desert ship**'. Some carnivorous animals, fulfill their need of water through their food only. Whereas the bird find out water by flying to the distant regions.

**Addax**, is a big antelope animal of Sahara desert. The light brown colour of its skin reflect light and heat. It means the heat does not penetrate in its body. Its digestive system is such, that it can live on coarse grass and small quantity of water. Besides these jackal, sand rats, foxes, antelopes and different species, insects, crocodile etc. are the habitat of this area.



**Design 9.2** Addax

As far as the people are concerned, nomads are the habitants of such regions. The nomads are the people who fulfill their daily needs from animals. By selling the animal product, milk etc. they get money to purchase other things of their daily needs. They do not stick to one place, but they wander where they get grass for their animal grazing. They are

called as the **Torring nomads** of Sahara. They rear camels, horses, sheep and goats.

**The cold deserts :** There are cold deserts also in the world. The temperature of these areas may fell to - 50° Celsius. In this lesson we will study about Ladhak as a cold desert of the world.

**Ladhak –The cold desert :** Ladakh is the coldest desert of the world. This is a part of Jammu and Kashmir. It disconnects from the world for approximately six months every year due to heavy snow fall. Ladakh is known as moon land. Because it is not so easy to reach there.

**Ladakh** is a vast sandy desert with naked stony slopes. Due to the severe weather, it is difficult to live these. The Indus river flows through Ladakh and Indus valley lies in the centre of Leh area. Shyok, Suru and Zangskar are other rivers which flow through Ladakh. They also have carved vallies in the area. There is scarcity of water in cold desert also as it is in hot deserts. The only difference is that the scarcity of the water is due to non availability of water in hot desert. But in cold deserts the scarcity of water because of frozen form of water due to extremely low temperature. Therefore there is dryness in both types the deserts. Natural vegetation does not grow due to dry weather.

There are many mountain-passes to enter Ladakh. Karakuram and Zojila are some of the important mountain passes. When the snow melts apple, walnut, apricot, mulberry trees are grown. In the lower part of the mountains, pencil cedar, Elam, few cypress and willow etc. trees are grown. In the domestic animals; cow, goats, sheep, dogs etc. are reared. In wild animals wild yak, wild sheep, hares, kiang which looks like pong etc. are found in this region. Only the lizard is the scrawling animal that is found in this region. Among the minerals, borax and sulphur is found in large quantities.

For last three decades, the Ladakh has risen to be a centre of attraction for tourists and tourism industry has developed in this area. About 400 hotels have been built in Leh. The opening of Srinagar-Leh roadway has been a doorstep to the other part of the world. Leh is also linked with other part of the world by airways. This development has brought major change in the life style of the people of Leh-Ladakh. The handicraft, particularly pashmina shawls of Leh are famous all over the world.

## 5. Life in Tropical and Sub-Tropical :

This area is extended on the 5° north and south of the equator. In some places this area extends upto 10° latitudes. Following are the areas that are included in this region.

1. The Amazon Basin of South America
2. Zaire Basin (Congo) in Africa, and Coastal area of western Africa along with the gulf of Guinea.
3. Malaysia in Asia and eastern archipelago.

In this lesson, we will study the life in Amazon valley. This is plain lowland and plain of southern America which is formed by the alluvial brought by Amazon river. The Amazon river is the largest river of the world next to the river **Nile**. From the volume of water flowing point, it is the largest river of the world. The river joins the southern Atlantic ocean after originating out of the snow covered Andes mountain of southern America.

The Amazon basin is consist of alluvial soil which is very fertile. As it is located near the Equator, it is hot and get rainfall throughout the year. That is why it is also known as equatorial rain forest. The life in this region is divided into three parts.

1. Life in rainforest canopy.
  2. Life in Amazon river.
  3. Human life near the coastal area of Amazon river.
1. **Rainforest canopy :** The life in upper forest part of the rain forest canopy. The shoots of trees are so intermingled with each other to form a canopy. The living beings, birds can never come down on the surface of the Earth. This animal kingdom includes insect eating animal, multicoloured birds like parrots and many species of animals. The habitat of this area, runs from one tree to the other with the help of shoots, they do not come down on the surface of the Earth.
  2. **The life in Amazon River :** Amazon river is a huge river, it has thousand tributaries. Some of the channels are very deep and some are very much wide. These tributaries are covered with leaves shed by the trees, these are the home of many kinds of fish.

- 3. The coastal life of Amazon River :** The tributaries of huge Amazon river flow through the forests which act as a natural ways of transportation. These forests are also a source of food for the inhabitants. Some of the people still live traditionally. As they live upon hunting, fishing and growing crops. Cannowing (Boating) by hand to move from one place to other. Some of these had made houses in these boats. Still some people join engines to the boats according to the new techniques.

Some people of this area shift to other place after living, hunting animal and taking primary crops for some time. They do so because, by leaving the soil vacant for sometime it may regain its fertility naturally. Now-a-days the rainforests are being cleared at great speed, which is of big concern. The cutting of trees is at high speed, for the sake of constructing buildings, for large farms (land holdings) and cattle rearing. It is not only this, but also the less fertile soil of this region is not fit for cattle rearing and growing crops for a long time. The people use a place for their needs and then move to another place after some time. Thus the cutting of forest is being done continuously and natural fabric is being destroyed.

- 3. Life in Subtropical Areas :** The subtropical areas of world extend from latitude  $23\frac{1}{2}^{\circ}$  north, tropic of cancer to  $23\frac{1}{2}^{\circ}$  south, i.e. the tropic of Capricorn, from the equator. Out of these subtropical areas, we will study about the *plains formed by Ganga –Brahmaputra* rivers.

The plain extends upto 2500 km. to the south of Himaliyan mountains. These plains are formed by the two rivers. Ganga and Brahmputra. These are very important plains and high density of people like to live in this area. This region has seen last urban development and due to fertile soil, availability of water and developed means of transportation this has became India's developed region. On the basis of rivers it is divided into two parts.

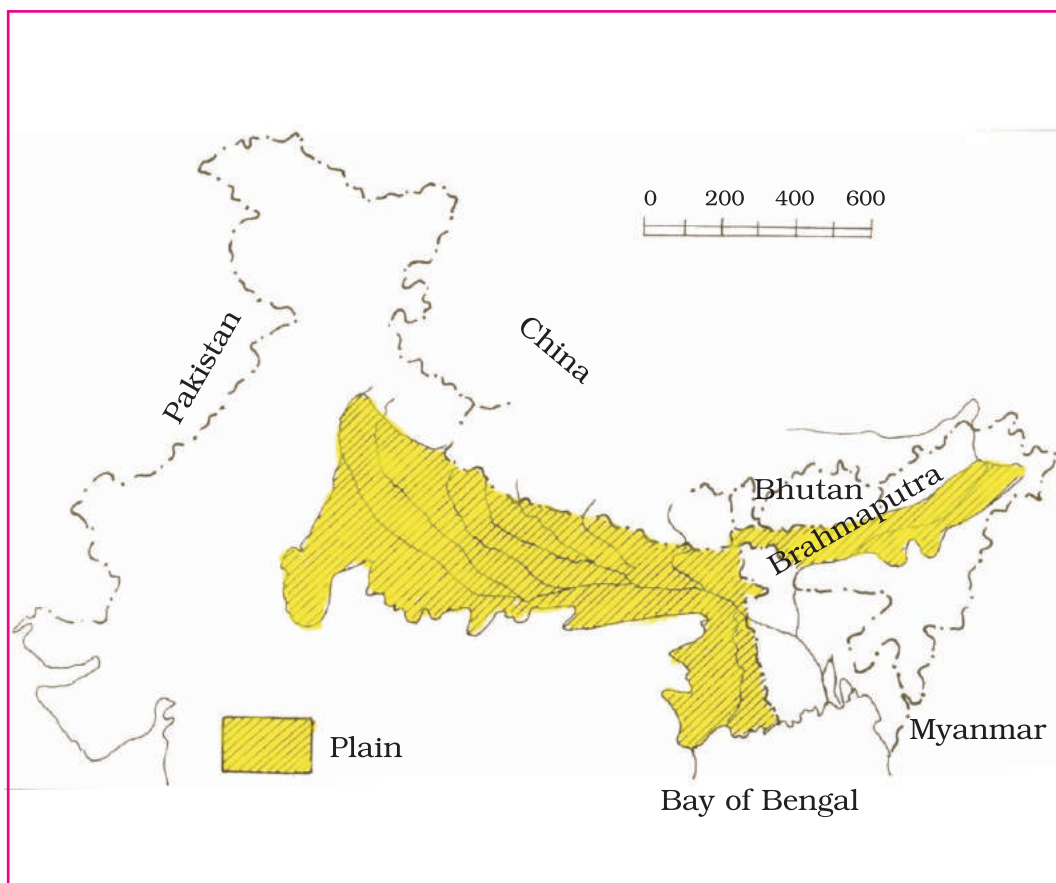
**Plain of Ganga** – This includes the states of Uttar Pradesh, Bihar and West Bengal.

**Plain of Brahmaputra** – The major part of the plain is in the Assam State.



In this plain area there is not much variety of relief features. This area is characterised by the meandering paths because of river erosion. At some places the ox-bow lakes are found which are naturally made by the obstruction of water flow. This is the place where the speed of rivers slows down, it gets divided in to different branches while unloading the carried material. Thus the delta shaped ( $\Delta$ ) feature formed at its end. These rivers Ganga Brahmaputra form the biggest delta of the world i.e. Sunderban delta with area of 33000 Sq. Km. New Delhi which is capital of India is also lies in plains of Ganga.

The alluvial soil of Ganga-Brahmaputra plain is very fertile. It has been deposited by two rivers. Rice, wheat sugarcane, oil seeds, grains, fruit and tea are some of the important crops which are grown over here. Formerly the farmers used to depend on the monsoon showers for their crops. But in the recent years irrigation facilities have been extended to the farmers. Now two to three crops are raised from the same field annually.



**Design 9.3** Plain of Ganga Brahmaputra

The rice is an important staple crop of the people of this area. Even fish form an important part of the diet of some areas. Primarily, being an agricultural region, some of the agro based industries have been developing. With the increase in growth of population, the most of the area is being used for building houses and towns. Thus the land under agriculture is reducing here continuously. The hundreds of cities are in this region. Varanasi is an ancient city which is located along the bank of Ganga river. Besides, Haridwar, Allahabad, Patna, Kolkata, Tezpur, Dispur are some the important cities, which are also located in this plain area.

With the rapidly increasing population the smoke emitting means of transport, industries, the water of river Ganga is being polluted. Union Government of India has initiated Ganga-Action Plan. With this plan the idea is to save river Ganga from pollution but lack of public support is causing big hurdle.

**The life in Temperate Areas :** The temperate areas are located in the middle Latitudes of the both of the hemispheres. These areas are situated to the interior of the continents and away from a maritime (oceanic) influences. There is great range of temperature between summers and winters. The temperature rises upto 20° celsius during the summers and falls down to 20° celsius in winters. The areas of southern hemisphere are not so far away from the ocean. Therefore, the temperature here, does not fall or rise so much as in northern hemisphere and rainfall is also scanty. Due to this reason only grass grows here. The following areas of the world are under these grasslands. These are called by different name in different continents.

- |                  |   |                  |
|------------------|---|------------------|
| 1. North America | - | Prairies         |
| 2. South America | - | Pampas           |
| 3. Europe        | - | Steppe           |
| 4. South Africa  | - | Veld             |
| 5. China         | - | Manchurian Plain |
| 6. Australia     | - | Downs            |

In this lesson we shall study only about the prairies of North America and veld of Africa.

**The life in Prairies grasslands :** The prairies are the grass lands of North America, which are away from maritime influence, extend into the interior of continents. The most of the area is in U.S.A. and Canada. The southern part of Prairies makes a boundary between U.S.A. and Mexico. In the north it merges with jungle-belt of Canada. Mostly there is no tree in the prairies. Where there are low lands the trees are found in river valleys, where the availability of ground water is sufficient. Because of the river flow the ground water table rises up. The main feature of the plains is that, the grass grows upto two meter high which covers the whole land of this region.



**Design 9.5** Prairies of North America

Since people started living over here, the landscape and landuse has changed to a great extent. The human activities like agricultural practices, industries, making houses to live, developing means transportation etc. have changed the land-scape and landuse as well. Usually, the people

from Canada and snow covered areas of Europe have established over here primarily. Canada-Alberta, Saskechwan and lowland Manitoba, etc. are the some of the very fertile areas of this region. After clearing the grass, the agricultural practices have been adopted in these area.

With the construction of the Candian Pacific Railways the transportation has become easier over there. Laying of rails has been a centre of attraction for the people and many people are moving to live here. Most of people are dwelling in 25 km. radius of railways. As in India, cities formed after the towns and for connecting them with each other, railways came into existence. But in other way round, primarily the railways had been constructed and afterwards human settlements, towns and cities developed along the railways tracks in Canada and other regions.

Due to dry weather cattle rearing is very popular in western part of prairies. The cattle grazing is along the slopes of rocky mountains. The important animals, among the domesticated are bison, deer, antelopes and poultry. In winters, the dry wind blow from the west and melts the snow. The summers and autumn seasons the warm winds turns the grass into hay.

Wheat is the main crop of this area. The farms are very big and are not isolated. The mechanised agriculture with modern machines is possible. Besides wheat, barley and oats are also grown here. Wheat is sown in spring season, the showers of late spring and bright sunshine of the summer help wheat to grow quickly. In August, this crop is ready for harvesting. These machines are called cambines, look at the picture of stores of food grains in Prairies.

From these stores, the wheat is being transported through the rail to the other places.

The men had exploited the earth surface in these plains through numerous activities which result into soil erosion. This is mainly through wind. As a result many of the places came under the drought. Thus with the decrease in fertile area the production of crops have also been decreased. Therefore government started taking interest in the agriculture aspect of these areas. The cattle grazing is prohibited in some areas of Prairies.





**Design 9.6** Stores of Food Grain in Prairies

The people of Prairies mainly speak French and English. Thick concentration of such people is found in Qubec province of Canda. This province is trying to attain status of independent nation.

**Life in Veld Grasslands of Africa :** Veld is an extensive grass land of southern Africa. Veld is in the east of South African plateau. It includes eastern part of Cape colony, entire Orange free State and most part of the transwal. As one goes away from the coast to the interior of the continents the climate becomes drier, because the moist winds from the ocean do not reach there. Therefore these regions are known as dry regions. As we go further west, these grasslands almost merges into the desert areas.

The area of high plateau is known as the high veld. Their height ranging from 1120 m to 1670 m. The middle veld is a plateau ranging from 610 m to 1120 m below this lies the low veld. The High veld is a central ridge which forms the water shed of the region. The Zambezi, Limpopo and Sabi rivers flow down the slopes and have created falls and rapids.



The maize is an important crop of this area. Large quantities of maize is being exported to other countries. The map of Africa, showing the veld region is provided in this lesson, study the map of natural vegetation of Africa in the Atlas. In some places, the maize grow naturally. Cattle rearing is also an important occupation in these parts. The wool of the sheep of this area is known throughout the world since earlier times. In many parts of the veld several minerals are found. Gold and Coal are mines are these near Johansberg. The diamond mines are found in Kimberley.

Veld, besides agriculture, is rich universal resources also. That is why, there are industries that are based on agriculture or other universal based. Therefore these industries have given, rise to the growth of towns. For example, Pretoria is an important town because of specified industry of iron and steel, railways and Pharmaceuticals. This development has reduced the grasslands to a considerable extent and has affected the natural environment.

### Points to Remember

1. Deserts are of two types : Hot & Cold. Sahara, Arab, Atacama, Kalahari are hot deserts while Ladakh is cold desert.
2. Life in tropical and subtropical regions such as Amazon basin, Congo basin, Gulf of Guinea. Ganga-Brahmaputra plains and South eastern islands of Asia matches a lot.
3. In temperate regions, Prairies, Pampaz. Steppies, Vald and Downs have identical life styles.



### I. Answer the following questions in about 1-15 words.

1. What are the deserts ? How many types of deserts are there ?
2. Write about the hot desert ?
3. What are cold deserts ?
4. Write down the extension of – Tropical and Subtropical region.

5. Describe the climate of warm temperate region ?
6. Why camel is known as ship of deserts ?
7. Name the rivers that flow in Ladakh ?
8. What do you understand by Oasis ?

**II. Write the answer of the following questions in about 50-60 words :**

1. Write in brief about the life of people in deserts.
2. Write down the natural vegetation of hot desert Sahara.
3. Write about the extension of Ganga-Brahmaputra Plain and also about the land forms of this region.
4. What type of climate is there in Ganga-Brahmaputra plain ? Write about the crops grown in this area ?
5. To what extent is the Amazon basin extended ? Write about the vegetation and main crops.
6. Write in brief about Prairies grass lands, what is the importance of railways in the development of this plan.
7. Write about the vegetation and animals of Sahara desert.
8. Why is Ladakh known as 'moonland' ? Write about the climate and vegetation of Ladakh.
9. Write in brief about Veld Grasslands of Africa.

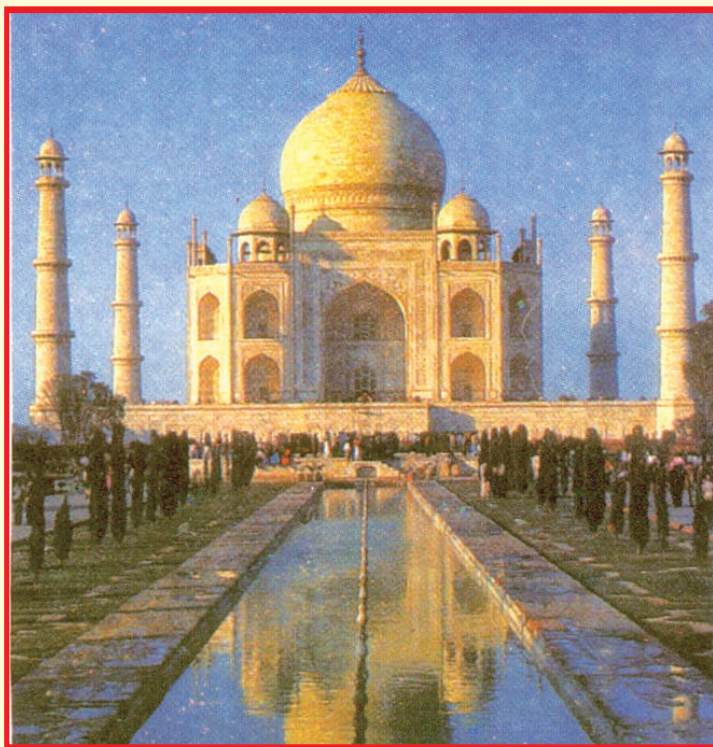
**III. Locate or show the following areas on the world map :**

1. Hot deserts of the world.
2. Mid Latitude Grass lands.

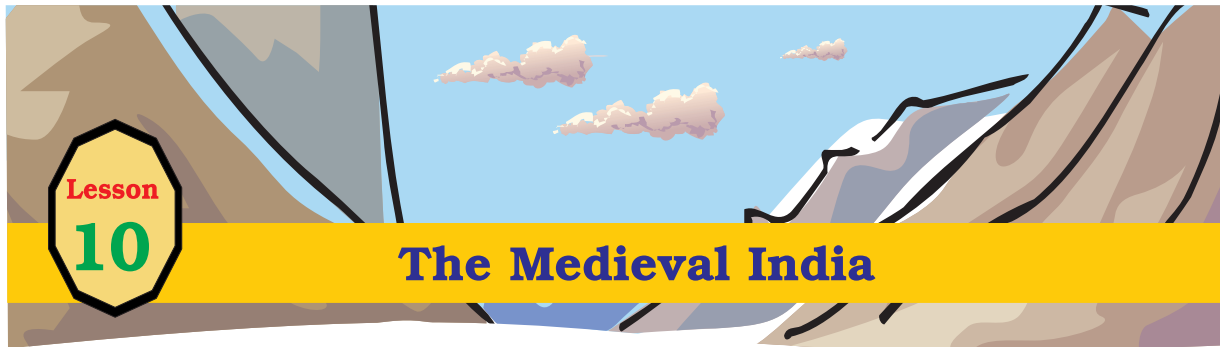


## **Unit - II**      **History**

### **Our Pasts - II**







We have studied in the sixth class that how early man became a gatherer from a hunter. How did human started growing different crops ? How did he establish Mahajanapadas from small tribes ?

In the beginning human beings lived at the banks of rivers but due to increase in population and other sources of water they started living away from the banks of rivers. You can see in the map of India that a subcontinent is a big geographical unit which is different from other subcontinents.

### Terms used to describe the Indian Subcontinent:

The Indian subcontinent, comprising the present six countries of Pakistan, Afghanistan, Nepal, Bhutan, Bangladesh and India. In the past it was known as Hindustan or Bharatavarsha.

### New and Old Terms :

History gave the various names to India in different periods. In Vedic period, it was known as Aryavarta (that means country of Aryans). It was called Bharatavarsha at the name of king Bharat during the time of Mahabharata and Purans.

The Iranians used the term "**Hindu**" for India. The Greeks used the term "**Indus**" for India. In Bible "**Hoddu**" term is used for it.

When Buddhism was introduced in China, the Chinese used the term "**Tien Chu**" for India. After Huin Tsang's visit another term, "**Yin-Tu**" used for India.

### Time Frame of the Medieval Period of Indian History :

Generally, the history of every country is divided into three periods - **Ancient**, **Medieval** and **Modern**. The period between the ancient and





**Design 10.1** The Indian subcontinent, comprising the present six countries of Afghanistan, Pakistan, Nepal, Bhutan, India and Bangladesh

modern periods of history is known as the medieval period. In India, the medieval period stretches from the eighth to the eighteenth century. The eighth century has been taken as the beginning of the medieval period in India as many changes in society, politics, economy, culture and religion were taking place. Similarly, the break-up of the Mughal empire and coming of the British into power in about the middle of the eighteenth century, which marked the end of the medieval period.

This medieval period is further divided into two parts- early medieval period and later medieval period. The period from the eighth to the beginning of the thirteenth century is regarded as the early medieval period while the period from the thirteenth century onward upto the eighteenth century is regarded as the later medieval period.

### **Major Historical Trends.**

In the medieval period we find certain historical trends which differentiate it from the ancient period.

1. During this period, the coming of the Muslims led to the growth of a composite culture. There was a lot of interaction between the Hindus and the Muslims.
2. Most of the languages, particularly Hindi, Urdu, that we speak even today, developed during this period.
3. In the medieval period, many of our social customs, traditions and religious beliefs have their origin.
4. There was much more contact between India and the world. Trade led to a greater interaction of people from different parts of the world. There was a lot of give and take. India borrowed many things from the traditions of other countries.
5. The Bhakti and the Sufi saints brought about a better understanding of the basic principles of Hinduism and Islam.
6. During this period, there was marked improvement in great expansion in trade and commerce.

### **Historical Sources**

The historians depend on archaeological and literary sources about the information of medieval period.

### A) Archeological Sources :

Archeological sources include ancient monuments, temples, inscriptions, coins, utensils, tools, weapons, ornaments and paintings etc.

- (1) **Ancient Buildings :** They include temples (like Khujraho, Bhubaneshwar, Konark etc.) Mosques (like Jama Masjid, Moti Masjid etc.), Forts (Red Fort, Agra Fort etc.) Pillars (i.e. Qutab Minar), palaces (Jiasalmer, Jaipur) etc.



**Design 10.2** The Mahadeva temple of Khujraho

- 2) **Inscriptions :** Inscriptions provide an important information about different aspects of the Early Medieval Period. They also provide us information about important events, dates, the personal qualities of the rulers about the specimens of art and the administration measures etc. of this period.

Do you know why did the kings engrave their orders on the plates of bronze, inscriptions and the walls of the temples ?

- 3) **Coins :** Coins, throw light on important historical events, dates and personalities, Some coins give us an information about the economic condition of the country during this period.

Historians depend on literary sources as well as archeological sources to know about Indian medieval period. People used paper to write religious Granths, accounts of rulers, government documents etc. because the price of the paper was reduced in the medieval period.



**Design 10.3** Coins of Akbar reign

## B) Literary Sources

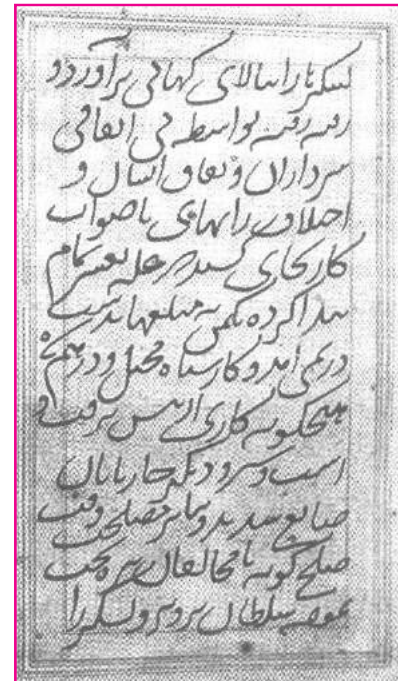
- (1) Literary sources include autobiographies and biographies, chronicles of rulers and dynasties, documents etc. These provide us important information about the medieval period.

*Do you know why did the literary sources come in existence ?*

### (2) **Accounts of Foreign Travellers :**

Accounts of foreign travellers are also another important literary sources of this period. Muslim travellers visiting India wrote an account of their travels. Iban Batuta's Kitab-ul-Rihla account describes the reign of Muhammad-bin-Tughluq. Al-Beruni also wrote an account about his stay in India. Abdul Razzaq visited the kingdom of Vijayanagar and wrote about the conditions in the kingdom.

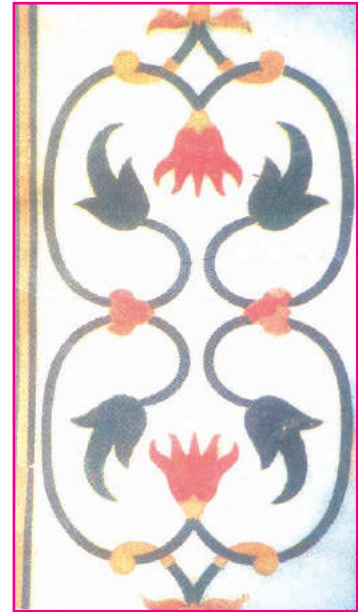
Besides this the accounts written by European travellers throw light on the conditions in India during their visit.



**Design 10.4** A literary source



- (3) **Painting :** Painting in addition to giving general information, they also give us knowledge about the development of art, especially the art of painting during the medieval period.
- (4) **Music :** Along with painting music is also a good source of historical knowledge. The Mughal rulers except Aurangzeb patronized it. Therefore, music developed during their reign. Akbar patronized many musicians. Among them Tansen was a famous musician. Thus music also is a good source of historical knowledge. It points out to the fusion of the Hindu and Muslim cultures.



**Design 10.5** Mughal painting



**Design 10.6** Tansen



**Points to Remember**

1. The Indian Subcontinent comprises the countries of Pakistan, Afghanistan, Nepal, Bhutan, Bangladesh and India.
2. Medieval Period : The period between the ancient and modern period of history is known as the Medieval Period.
3. Medieval Period is further divided into two parts- Early Medieval Period and Later Medieval Period.
4. **Historical sources :**
  1. **Archeological Sources :** Monuments, temples, inscriptions, coins, utensils, ornaments etc. are called archeological sources.
  2. **Literary Sources :** Autobiographies, biographies, chronicles, accounts of foreign travellers, paintings, music etc. are called literary sources.
5. **Major Historical Trends :** During the medieval period developed a composite culture, languages, many social customs, traditions and religious beliefs, contacts between India and world, trade and commerce etc. were developed.



**I. Answer these questions**

1. What were the terms used for the Indian subcontinent in the history of India ?
2. In how many parts Indian history is divided by the historians ?
3. How many types are sources of Indian history ?
4. How are the accounts of foreign travellers an important sources of history ?
5. Ibn Battuta was a \_\_\_\_\_ traveller.

**II. Fill in the blanks:**

1. Indian subcontinent was known as \_\_\_\_\_ or \_\_\_\_\_ in the past.
2. The \_\_\_\_\_ century is considered as a century of change.
3. The Chinese used the term \_\_\_\_\_ for India.

4. Monuments, inscriptions and coins are \_\_\_\_\_ sources while autobiographies and biographies are \_\_\_\_\_ sources.

**III. Write True or False for each statement**

1. The medieval period was divided into two parts- Early medieval period and Later medieval period. ☐
2. Many social customs and traditions were not come in existence. ☐
3. During the medieval period many special reforms performed for the development of trade and commerce. ☐
4. During the medieval period there was not a lot of interaction between Hindus and Muslims. ☐

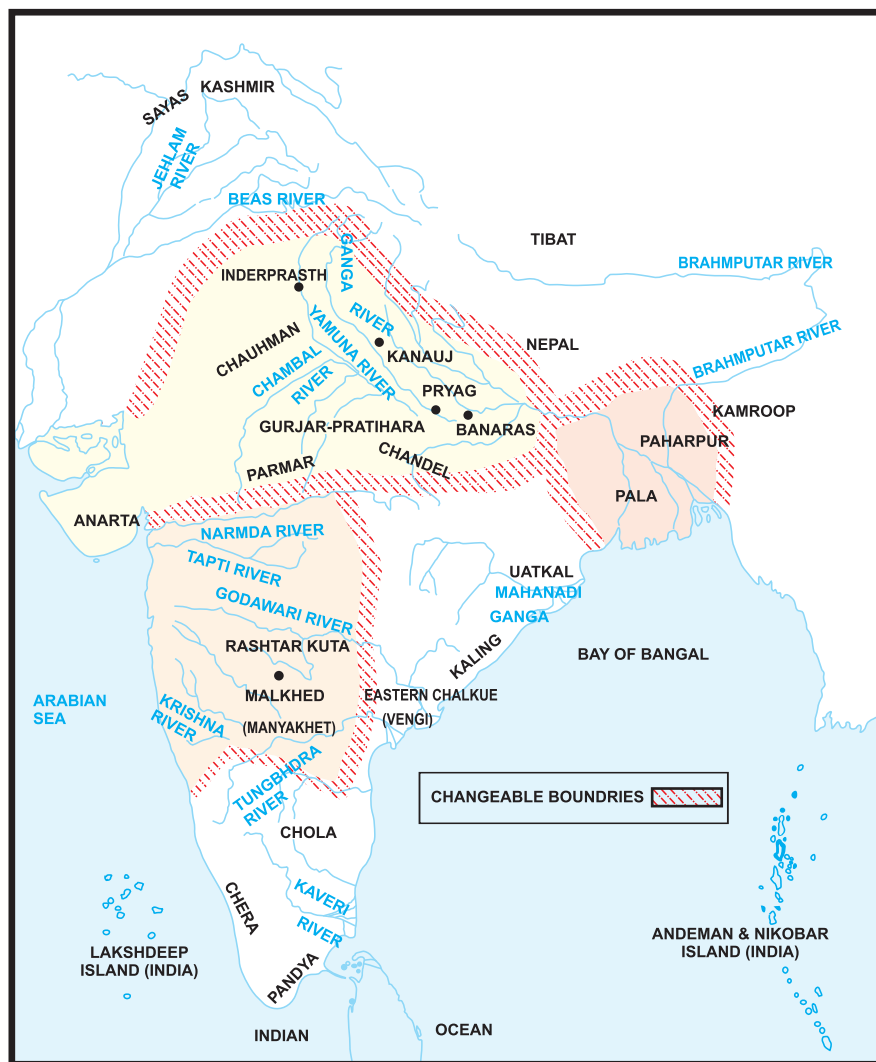


1. Show the extent of Afghanistan, Pakistan, Nepal, Bhutan, India and Bangladesh countries on the outline map of Indian Subcontinent.
2. Paste the pictures of four main monuments of medieval India in your note book.





Many Kingdoms like the Gurjara-Pratiharas, the Palas, the Rajput Kingdoms and the Ghaznavids and Ghorids were established in north and south India during the early medieval period. The Rashtrakutas ruled in the Deccan. There were many small Kingdoms. In the south were the Pallavas, the Pandyas and the Cholas.



**Design : 11.1 : Main Kingdoms during the 7<sup>th</sup> – 12<sup>th</sup> Century**

## North India

### The Gurjara-Pratiharas

The Gurjara-Pratiharas ruled over parts of Rajasthan and Gujarat.

The Pratihara dynasty was founded by **Nagabhata-I** in 725 A.D in Avanti and parts of southern Rajasthan. Mihirbhoj was the most powerful ruler of this dynasty. He ruled from A.D. 836 to 885. Under his this dynasty reached the Zenith of its glory. He even conquered Kanauj and thus added much to his glory at that time. After Mihirbhoj his son, Mahendrapala became a ruler, who ruled from A.D. 885-910. He was a lover of literature and art. Raj Shekhar was the most famous poet of his court. Because Pratihara ruler Rajyapala accepted the sovereignty of Mahamud Ghazanavi in 1018-19 therefore, he was killed by Rajputs. So the Gurjara-Pratihara dynasty came to an end.

Show the extents of kingdoms Gurjara- Pratiharas, Rashtrakutas, Palas, Cholas and Chauhans on the outline map of Indian Subcontinent. Can you recognize the extents of these dynasties in the present states ?

### The Palas

The Palas ruled in the region of Bengal, Bihar and Jharkhand. Gopala founded the Pala dynasty in Bengal and Bihar in 750 A.D. His son Dharampala was the most powerful ruler of this dynasty. He ruled from A.D. 770-810. He conquered areas and changed his kingdom into an empire. He was Buddhist. He founded the famous monastery of Vikramshila, which grew to be a great university later on. His successor Devapala also became very famous. During the rule of Palas, a great progress was made in the field of architecture, painting, education and literature. Although the rulers of Pala dynasty were the followers of Buddhism but they had to tolerate for other religions. Devapala built a famous Mahabodhi Temple at Bodh Gaya. Under him, the Pala dynasty established trade relations with South-East Asia. The Pala dynasty came to an end towards the end of the 12th century.

You have studied in this chapter about various ruler dynasties of North India. According to you which dynasty was more powerful amongst them ?



**Design 11.2** Mahabodhi Temple, Bodh Gaya

## The Rashtrakut Dynasty

The Rashtrakutas belonged to the Deccan (The area to the north of the Krishna and Tungabhadra rivers is known as the Deccan). Dantidurg was the founder of the Rashtrakuta dynasty in 742 A.D. in modern Maharashtra. After Dantidurg's death Krishna-I, Govinda-II, Druva, Govinda-III, Amoghvarsha and Krishna-III etc. were the rulers of this dynasty. They fought against the Chalukyas and the Palavas in the south India. They also struggled against the Palas and Pratiharas for the control of the Kanauj. The Rashtrakuta ruler Dhruva defeated the Pratihara ruler Vatsraj. But Dhruva could not retain Kanauj for a long time because he concentrated on north India. The Rashtrakuta dynasty ended soon after the death of Krishna-III.

The Rashtrakutas were patrons of art and Education. The Kailash Temple at Ellora built by the ruler Krishna-I. King Amoghavarsha was a good poet. Rashtrakuta rulers had trade relations with other countries. Hinduism was the most popular religion during the early medieval period. They patronized Shaivism and Vaishnavanism. They also encouraged Jainism, Buddhism and Islam.





**Design 11.3** Kailash Temple at Ellora

**Patron :** Any influential person who helps any artist, craftsman, educationist etc. is called patron.

## **Society, Economy and Religion in North India.**

### **Society**

The caste system had become very rigid in the medieval period. Society was divided into four castes (Brahmans, Kashtriyas, Vaishyas and Shudras) but further also divided into many sub-castes. The Brahmans were given special respect in the society because they performed religious ceremonies. The king and the soldiers used to be a Kashtriyas. The Vaishyas did business. The Shudras were ill-treated in the society.

Women were given special respect in the society during the early medieval period like nowadays. They were given high education. They took part in the social and religious ceremonies. They had freedom to choose their husband.

### **Religion**

Jainism, Buddhism and Hinduism were the main religions that

flourished during the early medieval period. But the Rajputs were followers of Hinduism. So this religion made great progress under them. The Shaiva and Vaishnava sects were popular in North India in this time. The people worshipped Vishnu, Shiva and Shakti etc. They also worshipped of ten incarnations of Vishnu.

The Bhakti movement popularised in the both Northern and Southern parts of India during the medieval period. Sri Guru Nanak Dev Ji, Ramanuja and Madhava etc. laid stress on "Bhakti:" or complete devotion to God. They preached that loving God with a pure heart was the only means of attaining salvation. They were also against caste and class distinctions. The common people were influenced by their teachings.

### **Economy**

Agriculture was the main occupation of the people in the medieval period. Trade and commerce flourished during this period. India exported precious stones, spices, silk, woolen and cotton clothes, sandal wood, vegetables, coconut etc. while India imported dates, wine, horses etc. from Central and Western Asia.

### **Struggle for Kanauj**

Kanauj was the capital of king Harshavardhana. Its geographical location was such that whoever held Kanauj could control the Ganga Valley. The desire to control the Kanauj and Ganga Valley resulted in a struggle between the three powers-the Palas, Gurjara-Pratiharas and the Rashtrakutas. This struggle continued for about two centuries. So the historians have called it "Triple Struggle". This struggle for Kanauj economically weakened all the three dynasties.

Do you know the cause of victory of Kanauj and Ganga Valley ?

### **The Chauhans**

Rulers of Chahaman dynasty were also involved with the other rulers who fought the war. Later they became famous as Chauhans. They ruled over the territories around Delhi and Ajmer. They wanted to expand their kingdom in the east and west. Therefore, they fought a war against the Chalukias and the Gurwalas.



**Design 11.4** Prithviraj Chauhan

Prithviraj Chauhan was the most powerful ruler of this dynasty. He ruled from A.D. 1179 to 1192. He defeated Muhammad Ghori in the first battle of Tarain in A.D. 1191. In 1192 A.D. he was defeated and killed by the Muhammad Ghori in the second battle of Tarain.

## The Rajputs

After the death of king Harshavardhana the country was divided into many big and small states. Most of these states were ruled over by the Rajputs. They were fighting with each other. So, a large number of states were being formed, dissolved and formed again. Many Rajput states were established in North India between the eighth century and the thirteenth century. That is why this period is known as the **'Rajput period'**.

Why did the period from eighth century to thirteenth century is known as 'Rajput Age' ?

## Mahmud of Ghaznavi

Mahmud was the ruler of the kingdom of Ghazni, now in Afghanistan. He wanted to make Ghazni the most powerful kingdom in the region. For this he wanted a lot of money to organize a large army. Therefore, he attacked India to raise money seventeen times from A.D. 1001-1025.



**Design 11.5** Mahmud Ghaznavi

Do you know the reason of invasion at India by the Mahmud Ghaznavi ?

## Main invasions of Mahmud Ghaznavi

### 1. Attack on Jaipal, 1001 A.D.

In A.D. 1001 Mahmud attacked Jaipal the ruler of Hindushahi dynasty in Punjab.

## **2) Attack on Anandpal, 1008 A.D.**

Anandpal got together the Hindu rulers of Ujjain, Gwalior, Kalinjar, Kanauj, Delhi and Ajmer. Mahmud Ghaznavi invaded them near Peshawar in 1008 A.D. and conquered battle.

## **3) Attack on Nagarkot, 1009 A.D.**

Mahmud Ghaznavi invaded Nagarkot with a huge army in 1009 A.D.

## **4) Attack on Thanesar, 1014 A.D.**

Mahmud Ghaznavi had invaded Thanesar in 1014 A.D. and looted the temples.

## **5) Attack on Mathura and Kanauj, 1018-19 A.D.**

Mahmud Ghaznavi attacked Mathura in 1018 A.D.

## **6) Attack on Kalinjar A.D. 1021**

Vidyadhar the ruler of Kalinjar collected a large army to face the Mahmud Ghaznavi. But he fled away from the battle field and his army defeated.

## **7) Attack on Somnath Temple A.D. 1025.**

Mahmud Ghaznavi invaded Somnath Temple in Kathiawar in 1025 A.D. and took away hundreds of mounds of gold, silver and jewels.

## **Muhammad Ghori**

Muhammad Ghori, the ruler of Gaur Kingdom in Afghanistan, invaded India. He wanted to build up an empire in India. So in A.D. 1175, he invaded Multan and captured it.

Then he invaded Gujarat in 1178 A.D. whose ruler, Bhimdev fought bravely and defeated him. In subsequent years, Muhammad Ghori conquered Peshawar in 1179 A.D. and, Sialkot in 1182 A.D. and Punjab.



**Design 11.6** Muhammad Ghori



In 1191 A.D., Muhammad Ghori invaded Prithviraj Chauhan, the ruler of Delhi and Ajmer. A fierce battle was fought on the battle field of Tarain. Muhammad Ghori was defeated in this battle. In 1192 A.D. he came again with a huge army and defeated Prithviraj Chauhan in the second battle of Tarain.

Muhammad Ghori defeated Raja Jai Chand, ruler of Kanauj at the battle of Chandwara in 1194 A.D. There after, his army occupied the entire Ganga-Yamuna doab. Soon he had established a vast empire in India. He was the real founder of the Turkish empire in India.

Do you know the cause of invasion at India by Muhammad Ghori ?

### Points to Remember

1. During the Early Medieval Age, Gurjar-Pratihars, Palas and Rashtrakuta etc. dynasty's kingdoms emerged in the northern part of Indian Subcontinent.
2. During the early medieval period caste system was very rigid in the northern part of India. Society was divided into four classes- Brahmins, Kshatriyas, Vaishyas and Shudras.
3. During the Early Medieval Period Jainism, Buddhism, Shaiva and Vaishnava sects flourished in northern part of India.
4. During the Early Medieval Period agriculture was the main occupation of the Indians.
5. A struggle started between the three powers- the Palas, Gurjara-Pratiharas and the Rashtrakutas with the desire to control the Kanauj and Ganga Valley.
6. Prithvi Raj Chauhan was a powerful ruler of the Chauhan or Chahaman dynasty.
7. Mahmud Ghaznavi invaded India for seventeen times.
8. In 1192 A.D. Muhammad Ghori defeated Mahmud Ghaznavi in the second battle of Tarian.





**I. Answer the following questions :**

1. Which type of caste system was prevalent in the society during the medieval period ?
2. Which three dynasties were involved in the triple struggle ?
3. Which period is called as 'Rajput Period' ?
4. Why Mahmud Ghaznavi invaded India ?
5. Why Muhammad Ghori invaded India ?

**II. Fill in the Blanks**

1. Mehar Bhoj was a powerful ruler of the \_\_\_\_\_ dynasty.
2. Devpal built a temple of \_\_\_\_\_ at Bodh Gaya.
3. Rashtrakuta rulers were the patrons of \_\_\_\_\_.

**III. Match the Words :**

- |                              |                              |
|------------------------------|------------------------------|
| 1. Gurjara-Pratiharas rulers | Bengal, Bihar and Jharkhand. |
| 2. Palas rulers              | Rajasthan and Gujarat        |
| 3. Rashtrakuta rulers        | Deccan                       |



Compare the temples around you with the temples shown in this chapter and describe the similarities or variations noted by you.





### Emergence of new states in South India

Many Rajput states established in South India like North India during the medieval period. But amongst them Pallavas, the Pandyas and Cholas were the main three powerful kingdoms during this period. They continued fighting with each other for their supremacy.

### The Pallavas

The Pallava rulers became powerful after the end of the Satavahanas in the fifth and sixth century. Mahendravarman-I and Narasimhavarman-I were the two main rulers of Pallava dynasty. They expanded their Kingdom by defeating the Cholas, Cheras and Pandya rulers. Their capital was Kanchi.

Besides it the Pallava rulers were patrons of art and architecture. They built the Shore Temple and the Ratha Temple at Mahabalipuram. They also built the Kailasanath Temple at Kanchi. The Cholas defeated the Pallavas in the ninth century and declined the Pallava dynasty.



**Design 12.1** The Shore Temple, Mahabalipuram



**Design 12.2** The Rath Temple, Mahabalipuram



**Design 12.3** India in the 10th & 11th century

## The Pandyas

The Pandya Kingdom was situated in the southern parts of Tamil Nadu during the medieval period. Their capital was known as Madurai or Madura. It was an important centre of learning. Marco Polo visited this kingdom and has left an account of his visit. The Pandya Kingdom declined in the fourteenth century.

### A case study of the Cholas (A.D. 846-1267)

The cholas established a powerful kingdom in south India during the medieval period. Vijayalaya was the first ruler of the Chola kingdom. He won Tanjore from the Pallavas and made it his capital. Prantaka-I was a powerful Chola ruler, defeated a Pandya ruler and conquered his capital Madurai. He was however, defeated by the Rashtrakuta king Krishna-III in the battle of Takolam in 949. The cholas became weak after this defeat. It was Rajraja-I Chola and Rajendra Chola who revived the kingdom and made the Cholas the greatest power in South India.

#### Rajraja I (985-1014 A.D.)

Rajraja-I, also called Rajraja Chola, was the greatest and the most powerful ruler of the Chola kingdom. He ruled from 985 to 1014 A.D. He captured many important regions by defeating the rulers of Chera, Pandya and Sri Lanka. He took great interest in modernising his naval forces. He did many reforms in the administration. He built the famous Raj Rajeshwar Temple at Tanjore.

#### Rajendra Chola (1014-1044 A.D.)

He expended the Chola kingdom. He defeated the rulers of Pandya, Chera and Shri Lanka and conquered their territories. He took the title 'Gangai Koudachola or the Chola conqueror of the Ganga. He built a new town called Gangaikonda Cholapuram and made it the capital of chola kindgom. His conquest of the Andaman, Nicobar, Malaya, Sumatra and Jawa in the South-East Asia were the most important. It opened the trade link between China and South India. It considerably increased the income of Chola kingdom. Rajendra-I also made many improvements in the administration.

The successors of Rajendra Chola continued to fight against the

neighbouring kingdoms. This continuous conflict weakened the Cholas. As a result the empire declined.

### Administration

The Chola king was very powerful. He was the head of central government. He was all powerful but he acted upon the advice of his council of Ministers in government affairs. He supervised the administration, looked after justice and led troops in battle.

How the administration of Chola dynasty was different than the Present administration ?

The Chola kingdom was divided into provinces called **Mandalams**. The Mandalams were further divided into Valanadus. Each valanadu contained a certain number of villages. The village or nadu was the smallest unit of the Chola administration. Each village had two assemblies- ur and the sabha. The ur was the assembly of common villagers. The sabha was a group of male adults. All affairs of the village such as settlement of disputes, allocation of water and collection of taxes etc. were looked after by small committees.

Did the women take part in the Ur and Sabha assembly ?

The Cholas had a powerful army. The army consisted of elephants, cavalry and infantry. Navy was the most powerful wing of the army.

Land and trade were the two major sources of revenue for the Cholas. There was a flourishing trade with other countries.

Is the land and trade revenue collected by the Government of India in these days ?

### Society

Apart from the nobility, the Brahmans and the merchants were greatly respected in the society. The traders and artisans enjoyed great in society. The different sections of society were cooperated with each other for common purposes. Women were also held great honour in the society. They were also imparted high education. The laborers and peasants formed the working class. But they were very poor. They lead a very hard life.



## Religion

Hinduism was the most popular religion in the medieval India. The Hindu gods like Vishnu and Shiva were worshipped. Other religions like Buddhism and Jainism etc. also existed. A number of religious movements started during this period. Basava founded the Lingayata sect. Shankracharya preached the advaita philosophy. Ramanuja and Madhava were the other great religious teachers of Bhakti movement.

They laid stress on Bhakti of God. They preached that loving God with a pure heart was the only means of attaining salvation. They were also against caste and class differences. The common people were greatly influenced by their teachings.

## Education and Literature

The cholas made great progress in the field of education and literature during the medieval India. They encouraged the study of various subjects like grammar, philosophy, art, science and astronomy. The mediums of instructions were given Sanskrit and Tamil languages. Education was imparted in the courtyard of temples.

The chola kingdom saw the growth of Sanskrit and regional languages like Tamil, Telugu and Kannada. Many literary works were translated from Sanskrit into these languages. For example, Kampan translated the Ramayana into Tamil. Nanniah and Tikkana Telugu scholars translated the Mahabharata into Telugu. The epics Ramayana and Mahabharata provide us information about South Indian history of earlier and later medieval period.

## Agrarian Expansion in Tamil Nadu

The Cholas paid great attention to the development of agriculture in Tamil Nadu. As a result there was much agrarian expansion. They also paid proper attention to irrigation system almost all rivers, specially Kaveri were used for irrigation. They built many tanks for irrigation where it was not possible to take the water of river.



### **Design : 12.4 A tank in Tamil Nadu during the reign of Cholas**

They organized a tank committee for looked after the distribution of water in the fields.

The Chola rulers had exempted the land revenue in case of failure of crops due to heavy rain or drought. They provided loans to the cultivators to meet emergencies.

The Cholas cleared the jungles and brought land under cultivation with the help of nomadic tribes.

#### **Points to Remember**

1. During the Medieval Period, in the South India Pallavas, Pandyas and Cholas were the powerful kingdoms.
2. Mahendravarman-I and Narasimhavarman-I were the famous rulers of the Palas dynasty.
3. The Pallavas rulers built the Shore temple, Rathe temple at Mahabalipuram and Kailashnath temple at Kanchi.
4. Madurai was the capital of the Pandya Kingdom.
5. Rajraj-I was a powerful and great ruler of the Cholas dynasty.
6. Rajendra Chola took the title 'Gangaikouda Cholapuram.



### I. Answer the following questions :

1. Which rulers of Cholas dynasty again emerged as Cholas Kingdom ?
2. Which rulers were defeated by Rajraja-I and he captured their territories ?
3. Write about the important conquests of Rajender Chola.
4. What do you know about the Chola administration ?
5. Which type of agrarian was developed in Tamil Nadu ?
6. Which languages were developed during the Cholas reign ?
7. Which religion was very famous during the Chola reign ?

### II. Fill in the blanks

1. Pallava rulers made \_\_\_\_\_ their capital.
2. Marco Polo visited the \_\_\_\_\_ kingdom.
3. Rajendra Chola took the title of \_\_\_\_\_.
4. Women were held great \_\_\_\_\_ during the Cholas reign.
5. Nanniah and Tikkana Telugu scholars translated the \_\_\_\_\_ into Talugu.

#### Glossary :

Mandalams

Nadu

Sabha

Valandus

### III. Match the Words :

- |                  |                    |
|------------------|--------------------|
| 1. Basava        | Advaita Philosophy |
| 2. Shankracharya | Lingayata sect     |
| 3. Ramanuja      | Bhakti Movement    |
| 3. Madhava       | Bhakti Movement    |

### IV. Write True or False for each statement

1. Kampan translated the Ramayana into Tamil language.

2. The Cholas rulers had a powerful navy.
3. Mahenderavarman built a new town called Gangaikonda Cholapuram.
4. The Chola kingdom was not divided into provinces.



1. Locate the extent of Pallavs, Pandyas and Cholas kingdoms on the outline map of India.
2. Paste the pictures of Abu, Khujraho, Mahabalipuram, Kanchi and Tanjore in your note book.





The period from A.D. 1206 to 1526 in the history of India is known as the period of **Delhi Sultanate**. Many dynasties ruled from Delhi during this period. They were the slaves, the Khaljis, the Tughlaqs, the Sayyids and the Lodhis. Iltutmish, Balban, Alauddin Khalji, Mohammad-bin-Tughlaq and Firozshah Tughlaq were the greatest Sultans of the Delhi Sultanate. Few main historical sources are written below about the information of Delhi Sultanate.

**Sultan :** Sultan is a word of Arabian language which means 'ruler'.

### Historical Sources

Various court chronicles, the travellers's accounts and historical buildings are the main sources of information of the Delhi Sultanate.

- (1) **Travellers Accounts :** Iban Battuta and Maraco Polo etc. who visited India during the medieval period wrote an accounts about information of the personalities and reign of different Delhi Sultans.
- (2) **Court Chronicles :** Tughlaq Nama, Tarikh-i-Alahi, Tarikh-i-Firoz Shahi, Futuhat-i-Firoz Shah, Tarikh-i-Mubarak Shahi and Makhzari-i-Afghan provide us information about personality and main events of the Delhi Sultanate.
- (3) **Historical Buildings :** Historical buildings of Delhi Sultanate period like Quwat-ul-Islam Mosque, Alahi Darwaja, Tughlakabad, Hauz Khas, Lodhi Tomb, Firoz Shah Kotla etc. also provide us information about the artistic tastes of the Delhi Sultans.



## The Slave Dynasty

### Qutab-ud-din Aibak

During the medieval period Qutab-ud-din Aibak was the real founder of the Turkish rule in India. He was the first ruler of the Delhi Sultanate. He occupied Punjab in order to prevent Yalduz the ruler of Ghazni from invading it. He made Lahore his capital. Nasri-ud-din Qubacha, who had captured Multan and Sindh got married Aibak's sister. Aibak was a great lover of art. He built mosques in Delhi and Ajmer. He started the construction of **Qutab Minar**. He died in 1210 A.D. when he suddenly fell from his horse.



Design 13.1 Qutab Minar

## Iltutmish

Iltutmish was a slave of Qutab-ud-din Aibak and later became his son-in-law. Iltutmish was appointed as Amir-A-Shikar by Qutab-ud-din Aibak because of his capability and honesty. After the death of Aibak his son Aram Shah became the ruler who proved to be an inefficient sultan. So Iltutmish was made the sultan. He defeated Aram Shah and was imprisoned. Then Iltutmish killed him. Thus Iltutmish became the ruler in A.D. 1211 because of his hard work and capability.



**Design 13.2** Iltutmish

Do you know why Qutab-ud-din Aibak was appointed as his descendant to a slave ?

Iltutmish took many steps in order to consolidate the Delhi Sultante. He took control over the Amirs who were against the Delhi Sultanate. He defeated Taj-ud-din Yalduz of Ghazni and Nasir-ud-din Qubacha of Multan and Sindh. He captured some Rajput forts like Ranthambhor, Gwalior, Ujjain etc. He crushed the revolt of Bengal and captured it again. He saved India from the Mongol invasion under Changez Khan in 1221 A.D. He appointed Forty Amirs to run the administration of the state. They were called “Chalisa”.

## Razia Sultana

Razia Sultana was a daughter of Iltutmish. She was sit on the throne of the Delhi Sultanate. She ruled from 1236 to 1240 A.D. She suppressed the revolts of the regional governors. But the Amirs and army generals did not like to obey her because they did not like spend their life under a woman and she put to death in 1240 A.D.



**Design 13.3** Razia Sultana

Do you know the cause of Razia Sultana's murder ?

After Razia sultan a number of unimportant rulers became powerful.

## Ghiyas-ud-din Balban (1266-1286 A.D.)

Ghiyas-ud-din Balban declared himself as the Sultan of Delhi Sultanate after the death of Nasir-ud-din in 1266. He was the greatest ruler of the Delhi Sultanate. He ruled from 1266 to 1286 A.D. He brought under control the unrest spread by the Mewatis near Delhi and the robbers of Doab and Awadh. He crushed the revolts of Tughril Khan in Bengal. The criminals were severely punished. The army was re-organized. A special army was kept in the north western frontier provinces in order to defend them from Mongol invasions. He adopted a cruel policy, called '**Blood and Iron Policy**' against the Mongols. He also made reforms in the administration. He provided justice to his people.



**Design 13.4** Ghiyas-ud-din Balban

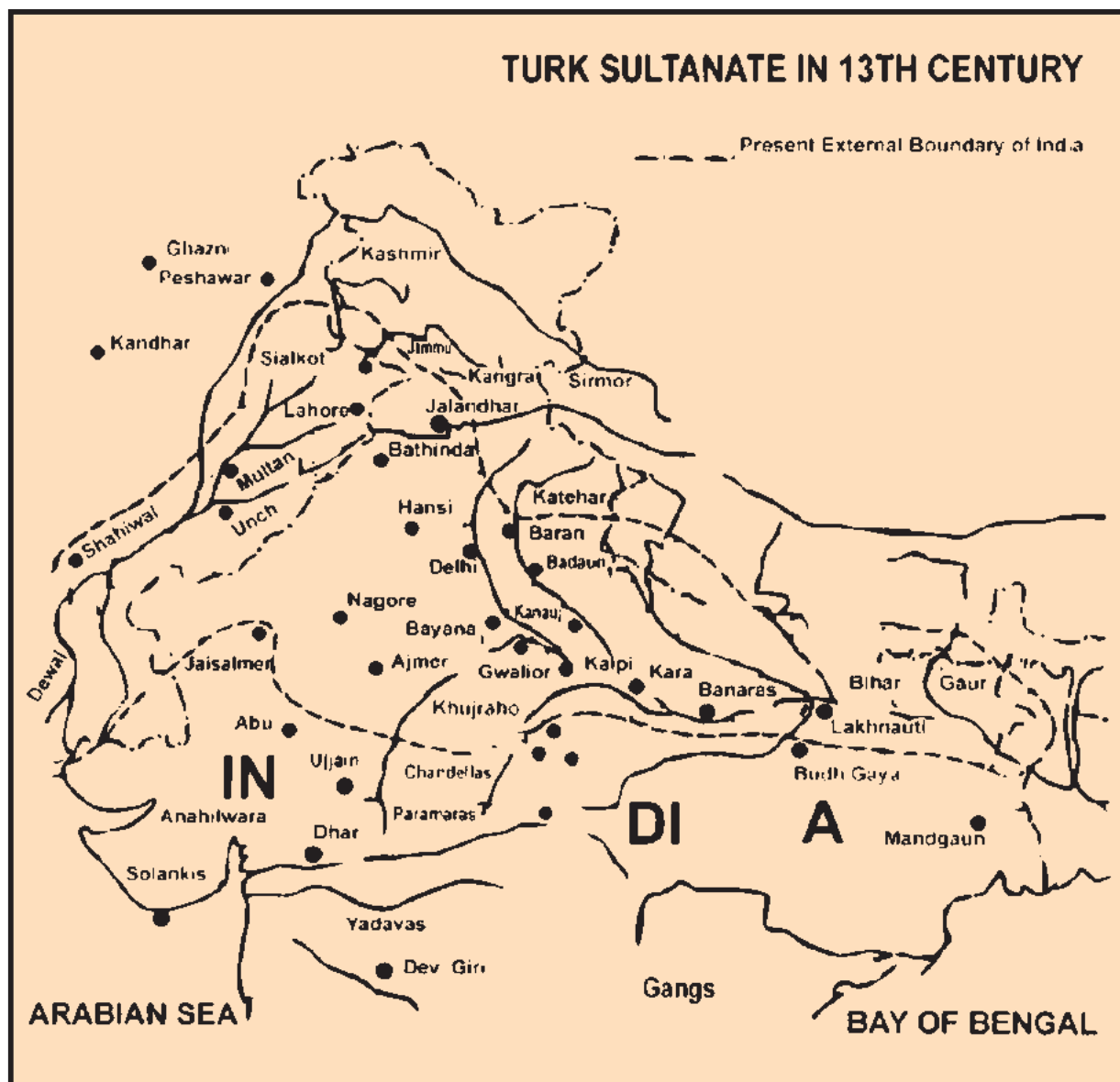
Ghiyas-ud-din Balban died in 1286 A.D. Since his successors were weak and inefficient, the throne was captured by Jalal-ud-din Khalji and the slave dynasty came to an end.

### **The Khalji Dynasty**

Jala-ud-din Khalji was the founder of the Khalji dynasty. He ruled from 1290-1296 A.D. Since the court had become a place of conspiracies in 1296 A.D. Ala-ud-din Khalji the nephew and the son-in-law of Jalal-ud-din Khalji. He killed Jalal-ud-din and became the ruler.

### **Ala-ud-din Khalji (1296-1316 A.D.)**

Ala-ud-din Khalji was the famous ruler of the Khalji dynasty. He ruled from 1296 to 1316 A.D. He wanted to establish an empire in India. He conquered Gujarat in 1299 A.D. In 1301 A.D. he captured most famous fort Ranthambore. There after he also captured Chittor in 1303 A.D. Then, he sent a large army in South India under his general, Malik Kafur. Malik Kafur Conquered Devgiri, Warangal, Dwar Samudra and Madurai, Ala-ud-din did not annex them into Delhi Sultanate.



**Design 13.5** Turk Sultanate in 13th century



## Economic reforms of Ala-ud-din Khalji

Ala-ud-din Khalji fixed the prices of all essential commodities at a low level. He appointed market officers to keep a check on the prices. The shopkeeper who broke the rule, was severely punished. For example the shopkeepers were beaten with the koras. A piece of flesh equivalent to the less weighted things by the shopkeepers was cut from the body of shopkeepers.



**Design 13.6** Ala-ud-din Khalji

## Reforms in the Army

Ala-ud-din Khalji started the practice of preparing descriptive rolls of soldiers and branding the horses. He started the system of cash salary to the soldiers. He also employed spies who were posted in different parts of the empire. In 1316 A.D. after the death of Ala-ud-din Khalji, Shah-ud-din, Umar, Mubark Shah, Nisru-ud-din Khusro Shah sultans ruled. In 1320 A.D. Ghazi-Tughlaq became a king after assassinating the Khusro Shah.

## Tughlaq Dynasty (1320-1414)

The Tughlaq Dynasty was one of the most famous dynasties of the Delhi Sultanate. Ghiyas-ud-din was the first ruler of this dynasty. He ruled from 1320-1325 A.D. He was an efficient military commander. He suppressed rebellions and established peace in his state. He was succeeded by Muhammad-bin Tughlaq.

## Muhammad-bin-Tughlaq (1325-1351)

Muhammad-bin-Tughlaq was a very powerful ruler of the Delhi Sultanate. He ruled from 1325-1351 A.D. He is well known in the history of India for his visionary plans. He was well educated, but all his plans failed because of his lack of experience. People had to face many problems because of his plans. So they were against him. That is why Muhammad-bin-Tughlaq called the "Intellectual Foolish King."



**Design 13.7 : Muhammad-bin-Tughlaq**

Do you know why Muhammad-bin-Tughlaq called a intellectual Foolish King.

### **Administration of Muhammad Tughlaq**

#### **Shift of Capital**

Muhammad-bin-Tughlaq had a vast empire. So, he in 1327, decided to shift the capital of the empire from Delhi to Devagiri (Daulatabad). There were two reasons behind it.

- (A) To protect the empire from the invasions of the Mongols.
- (B) To administer the empire better from Devagiri than from Delhi.

Do you know why Muhammad-bin-Tughlaq shifted his capital ?

Muhammad-bin-Tughlaq forced the people to leave the Delhi and move to Daulatabad. So, they had to face many problems. Hundreds of them people were killed on the way. After shifting his capital the administration of North India started worsening. So, the Muhammad-bin-Tughlaq decided to go back to Delhi. Thus his plan to change the capital proved to be unsuccessful.

## (2) Bronze Currency

In 1330 A.D., Muhammad-bin-Tughlaq introduced a token currency. There was an shortage of silver around the world during this period. So, the Muhammad-bin-Tughlaq issued bronze coins in place of the silver tankas. They had the same value as the silver coins. However, the plan failed as the people made fake coins in large quantity. It caused a great loss to the trade. So, the Muhammad-bin-Tughlaq took back the bronze coins and in return gave the silver coins. People made fake bronze coins in large numbers and in exchange got silver coins from the Government. Thus the state treasury became empty.

Do you know the cause why Muhammad-bin-Tughlaw issued the coins of bronze ?

## (3) Taxation in Doab

Muhammad-bin-Tughlaq increased tax in Doab because it was the most fertile area. But he done so at a wrong time. There was a grate reduction in the harvest due to the prevalent famine. So, the farmers could not pay the tax. Therefore, the officers of the Muhammad-bin Tughlaq started atrocities with the farmers. The farmers revolted against the Sultan. So, the Sultan had withdrawn his orders.

Suppose you are a farmer during the reign of Ala-ud-din Khalji or Muhammad-bin-Tughlaq and you cannot pay the tax imposed by the Sultan then what will you do ?

## Plan to Conquer Khurasan

Muhammad-bin-Tughlaq wanted to become a great emperor, so he decide to conquer Khurasan (Iran). He raised a large army. These soldiers of army were paid for one year. A lot of money was spent on their training and weapons, but after one year the Sultan gave up the idea of conquering Khurasan. The soldiers were disbanded. They spread the lawlessness in the state. It led to revolts and many states declared their independence. The Sultan lost control over the empire. He died in 1351 A.D.

## Firoz Shah Tughlaq

After the death of Muhammad-bin-Tughlaq, Firoz Shah Tughlaq became the sultan of Delhi Sultanate. He ruled 1351 to 1388 A.D.



**Design 13.6** Tughlaq Empire

The Muslims regarded Firoz Shah as an ideal ruler. Firoz Shah built many canals, tanks, wells, hospitals, and rest houses etc. during his reign. He established some new towns like Firozabad, Firozpur, Jaunpur and Hissar. He also set up many educational institutions. But he died in 1388 A.D.



**Design 13.9 :** Firoz Shah Tughlaq

### **Downfall of the Tughlaq Empire and Timor's invasion (1398 A.D.)**

The successors of Firoz Shah Tughlaq did not pay any attention towards the administration of Tughlaq empire.

Timor was a ruler of Balkh in central Asia. In 1398 A.D. he invaded India and looted Delhi. He went back with the loot. After the return of Timor to the central Asia, the provinces of Punjab, Malwa, Mewar, Jaunpur, Khandesh, Gujarat etc. declared themselves independent.

Before leaving Delhi, Timor appointed Khizar Khan as governor of Multan, Lahore and Dipalpur. As a result in 1414 A.D. Khizar Khan conquered Delhi and declined the Tughlaq Empire.



### **The Sayyids (A.D. 1414-1451)**

After the decline of Tughlaq empire, Khizar Khan laid the foundation of Sayyid dynasty. This dynasty ruled till 1414-1415 A.D. The last rulers of this dynasty were Mubark Shah, Muhammad Shah, Ala-ud-din Alam. Ala-ud-din Alam Shah was defeated by Bahlol Lodhi, a Governor of Lahore.

### **Lodhi Dynasty (A.D. 1451-1526)**

Bahlol Lodhi was the founder of the Lodhi dynasty. He maintained peace and order in the country. But he died in 1488 A.D. He was succeeded by his son Sikandar Lodhi.



**Design 13.10 :** Bahlol Lodhi

### **Sikandar Lodhi (1488-1517 A.D.)**

Sikandar Lodhi was the most powerful ruler of the Lodhi dynasty. He was a good administrator. He initiated many public welfare measures. For example, agriculture was improved and efforts were made to keep the prices of essential goods low. In 1503 A.D. he established the city of Agra and made it his capital. But in 1517 A.D. he fell ill and died. Therefore, Ibrahim Lodhi son of Sikandar Lodhi became the Sultan of Delhi Sultanate.



**Design 13.11 :** Sikandar Lodhi

### **Ibrahim Lodhi (1517-1526)**

Ibrahim lodhi was the son of Sikandar Lodhi. He sat on the throne of Delhi in 1517 A.D. He tried to put a stop to the increasing power of the Amire. But it resulted in rebellions against the Ibrahim Lodhi everywhere. Alam Khan went to Babar in Afghanistan and invited him to invade India.



**Design 13.12 :** Ibrahim Lodhi

Babar, the ruler of Kabul, invaded India. He defeated Ibrahim Lodhi in the first battle of Panipat in 1526 A.D. Ibrahim was killed in the battle. With his death the rule of Delhi sultanate came to an end. Babar founded the Mughal Empire in India.

## Development of Political Institutions During the Delhi Sultanate

### 1. Central Government

Sultan enjoyed extensive powers during the Delhi Sultanate. The Sultan had appointed ministers for important departments but they administrated their departments according to the sultan.

Each department was supervised by a minister or officer. He was in-charge of finance and revenue departments. In order to assist the Wazir many officers were appointed. Amongst them the important were Mushrif Mamlik, Mustafi-i-Mamlik, Ariz-i-Mamlik, Diwan-i-Insha, Diwan-i-Risalat, Sadar-i-Sadur.

### Provincial Administration

For the convenience of administration the empire was divided into many provinces. Governors were appointed to run the provincial administration. They were also called Subedar, Muqti or Wali. The provinces further divided into Paraganas a group of villages. Amil was the chief officer of Paragana. The head of the village was called Muqadam.

### Strategies of Military Control

The Sultans of Delhi Sultanate had captured various parts of India with the help of their army. They checked the foreign invasions with the help of army. They also maintained law and order in their states with the help of their army. Military force was necessary for suppressing the rebellions.

### The court, nobility and land control.

#### The Court :

The Sultans of Delhi Sultanate had maintained a court of their own. The Princes were given the front seats. The ministers, the heads of departments, other officers and ambassadors from foreign countries were assigned fixed places. The heads of departments were always present there to answer questions asked by the Sultan.

#### Nobility :

The Sultans of Delhi Sultanate were despots who ruled with the help of nobles. Most of those nobles were of Turkish or Afghan

families. But after the reign of Ala-ud-din Khalji the Muslims and Hindus were also appointed as officers. They formed a class of the nobility. The Central ministers, the provincial governors, the military commanders came from the nobility.

### Land Control :

Land revenue was the main source of income of the Delhi Sultans. At that time there were three methods Batai, Kankut and measurement of land for determining land revenue. It was collected in cash or other kind. Ala-ud-din khalji paid attention towards land reforms. He got measured all the cultivable land. He established department named Diwan-i-Must Kharaj for the look after of agriculture. The rate of land revenue was the highest. Firoz shah Tughlaq encouraged to agriculture. He dug many canals for irrigation. The rate of land revenue was reduced and loans given to the farmers were waived off.

### Resource Mobilization

Besides the land revenue the other sources of income of the state were Kharaj, Khams, Zakat and Jizya.

**Kharaj** was the tax on land held by non-Muslims, It was 10% to 50% of the total produce from land.

**Khams** was the 1/5 of the booty which was acquired during the war against the infidels, and which was the privilege of the Sultan. The remaining 4/5 of the booty was distributed among the army. The **Zakat** was a religious tax, which was imposed upon the Muslims. It was 2.5% of their property. Zazia was imposed on non-Muslims. It is believed that women, children and poor people were exempt from the payment of this tax. Its recovery was made on the basis of income at the rate of 10 to 40 Takas.

### Points to Remember

1. Qutab-ud-din Aibak constructed Qutub Minar.
2. Razia Sultana was a daughter of Iltutmish.
3. Iltutmish was a slave of Qutab-ud-din Aibak.
4. Ghiyas-ud-din Balban adopted a policy called 'Blood and Iron Policy, against the Mongols.

5. Ala-ud-din- Khalji started the practice of preparing descriptive rolls of soldiers and branding the horses.
6. Muhammad-bin-Tughlaq is known as wise foolish in the history.
7. Feroz Shah built many canals, tanks, wells, hospitals and rest houses etc.
8. In 1526 AD Babur defeated Ibrahim Lodhi in the first battle of Panipat.



### I. Answer these questions

1. Write the names of main historical sources of Delhi sultanate.
2. What role was played by the historical buildings in constructing the history of the Delhi Sultanate.
3. How did Balban consolidate the Sultanate?
4. Why did Muhammad-bin-Tughlaq shift the capital from Delhi to Devagiri ?
5. Describe the results of schemes of Muhammad-bin-Tughlaq.

#### Glossary :

Subedar  
Muqti  
Wali  
Amil  
Muqadam

### II. Fill-in the blanks

1. The Qutab-ud-din Aibak was the founder of the \_\_\_\_\_ Dynasty.
2. Razia Sultana was a daughter of \_\_\_\_\_.
3. Iltutmish become the ruler in \_\_\_\_\_.
4. Iltutmish nominated \_\_\_\_\_ as his successor.
5. Malik Kafur was the General of \_\_\_\_\_ Khalji.
6. Muhammad-bin-Tughlaq decided to shift his capital from \_\_\_\_\_ to Devagiri.
7. Timur invaded India during the reign of the rulers of the \_\_\_\_\_ Dynasty.



**III. Write True or False for each statement:**

1. Iltutmish was a slave of Qutab-ud-din Aibak.
2. Balban was the first ruler of the slave dynasty.
3. Ala-ud-din Khalji introduced the market control Policy.
4. The Lodhis were over thrown by the Sayyids.
5. Sikandar Lodhi and Babar clashed at the first battle of Panipat.



1. On outline map of India, mark the important extent of Delhi Sultanate.
2. Collect the pictures of monuments of the Sultanate period and paste them in your note book.





During the fifteenth century, Indian subcontinent was divided into many small states which were always fighting with each other trying to assert its independence.

Daulat Khan Lodhi, the governor of Punjab and his son was ill-treated by Ibrahim Lodhi, the last sultan of Delhi sultanate. Therefore Daulat Khan Lodhi and the Rana Sanga, invited Babar, the ruler of Kabul to invade India in 1526. Babar defeated Ibrahim Lodhi in the first battle of Panipat.

### Who were the Mughals :

Mughals were the descendants of Mongol ruler Changaze Khan of Central Asia. They had heard about the wealth of India. They wanted to capture it. Therefore they started continually invasions at India and tortured the Sultans of Delhi Sultnate. As a result of this, Babar founded Mughal Empire in 1526 A.D. when he defeated Ibrahim Lodhi in the first battle of Panipat.

#### Mughal Emperors :

Babar	1526-1530 A.D.
Humayun	1530-1540 and 1555-1556 A.D.
Akbar	1556-1605 A.D.
Jahangir	1605-1627 A.D.
Shah Jahan	1628-1657 A.D.
Aurangzeb	1658-1707 A.D.

### Babar : (1526-1530)

Babar was the first king of the Mughal Empire. He came to India from central Asia on an invitation from Daulat Khan Lodhi, the governor of Punjab and Rana Sanga, the ruler of Mewar.

**Battles of Babar :** Babar defeated Ibrahim Lodhi at the first battle of Panipat in 1526 and occupies Delhi and Agra. This angered Rana Sanga. He led a huge army against Babar in the battle of Kanwah. In A.D. 1527 Rana Sanga was defeated by Babar in the battle of Kanwah. With this Babar had complete the control over north India. He also defeated the Rajputs in the battle of Chandari in 1528 A.D. In 1529 A.D. Babar defeated the Afghans in at the battle of Ghaghara but he died in A.D. 1530. He was succeeded by his son, Humayun.



**Design 14.1** Babar

### Humayun : (1530-1540 & 1555-1556)

Babar died in 1530. His eldest son Humayun succeeded to the Mughal throne. In 1540 A.D. Sher Shah Suri defeated Humayun and exiled him from India. But in 1555 A.D. Humayun reoccupied Delhi by defeating Sikander Shah Suri, the successor of Sher Shah Suri. But Humayun died in 1556 A.D.



**Design 14.2** Humayun

### Akbar : (A.D. 1556-1605)

After the death of Humayun in 1556 A.D. Bairam Khan performed the coronation of Akbar at Kalanaur (Gurdaspur).



**Design 14.2** India in 1526 A.D.



**Design 14.3** Akbar

Soon after Akbar's accession he decided to capture again Delhi and Agra. The Mughal armies marched towards Delhi under the command of Bairam Khan. In 1556 they met Hemu the governor of Afghanistan in the battle of Panipat. Hemu was defeated and Akbar reoccupied Agra and Delhi which the Mughals had lost. In A.D. 1560, Akbar decided to end the regency of Bairam Khan and took over the government.

### **Akbar's conquests**

Akbar decided to extend Mughal power to other parts of the country. First of all he conquered Malwa in 1561 A.D. followed by Gwalior, Ajmer and Jaunpur. Akbar offered a hand of friendship towards the Rajputs. He himself married a number of Rajput Princesses. He also gave them high posts in his administration. Many of his trusted officials were Rajputs such as Raja Man Singh. But he also fought against those Rajput rulers who opposed him, such as Rana Pratap Singh.

Do you know why Akbar married with the Rajput princesses ?

Akbar wanted to capture the whole country. So he sent his armies in various parts of country to conquer and to annex. He conquered Gujarat and Bengal.





**Design 14.4** Extent of Akbar's empire

In 1595 A.D. the region of Kashmir, Sindh, Orissa and large parts of central India and Kandhar were conquered by Akbar. The northern parts of India was under Mughal control from 1595 A.D. to 1601 A.D. Akbar's Mughal armies remained busy in the Deccan. Finally the Mughal annexed Khandesh, Berar and some parts of Ahmadnagar. Akbar was now the emperor of the larger part of India.

**How the Akbarnama and Ain-i-Akbari are used to reconstruct history :** Akbarnama and Ain-i-Akbari are the two most important sources for the study of Akbar's reign written by Adul Fazal. They give important information about Akbar's court, his early conquests, administration, social, economic religious policy, and the developments in the field of art and architecture.

### **Akbar's Administration**

Akbar was the real architecture of Mughal Administration. He introduced innumerable administrative reforms.

### **Central Administration**

1. **The King :** The emperor was the head of civil and military administration. He was assisted by a number of ministers. The five most important ministers were the Wakil, Diwan-i-Ala, Mir Bakshi, Sadar-ur-Sadur, Faujdar, Kotwal.

### **Provincial Administration**

In order to run the administration in smooth manner Akbar had divided Mughal empire into 15 provinces or subas.

1. **Subedar :** Subedar's main duty was to maintain peace in the province and to enforce the law and order.
2. **Diwan :** He maintained a record of income and expenditure of the province.
3. **Bakshi :** He looked after the military administration of the province. He also made arrangements to mount the houses.
4. **Sadar :** He prepared the lists about the saints and the pirs of the state.
5. **Waqiya Nawis :** He was the chief of the spy department. He maintained a record of all events that occurred in the province.

6. **Kotwal :** He was a police officer. His main duty was to watch and maintain law and order in the city.

### Local Administration

In order to run the administration of Mughal empire in smooth manner Akbar emperor had divided the provinces into Sarkars, Paraganas and villages.

### Land Revenue Systems

Land revenue was the main source of the Mughal empire. With the help of Raja Todar Mal, revenue minister, Akbar introduced a lot of reforms in land revenue. (1) Measurement of Land (2) Classification of Land.

1. **Measurement of Land:** Land was measured into Bighas.
2. **Classification of Land:** Akbar classified the whole land into four types.
  - A. **Polaj Land:** This was the most fertile land. Therefore any crop could be sown.
  - B. **Parauti Land:** This land was cultivated after one or two years.
  - C. **Chhachhar Land:** The Chhachhar land was cultivated after three or four years.
  - D. **Barren Land:** The Barren land was cultivated after five or more years.

### Land Revenue

Government took away 1/3 of the produce of the Polaj and Parauti land. Very little revenue was charged on Chhachhar and Barren land.

- (a) **Kankut System:** According to Kankut system the government fixed the revenue on seeing the standing crops.
- (b) **Batai System:** According to this system the reaped crops were harvested and then divided into three parts. One part was given to the government as tax and the other two parts remained with the farmers.
- (c) **Nasak System:** According to the Nasak system, the revenue was fixed on the total production of the village. Mughal

government encouraged the farmers to bring more and more land under cultivation. The farmers were given loans on easy instalments. In the event of less produce or famine the land revenue of the concerned farmers was remitted.

### **Mansabdari System**

When the Mughal Empire started expanding, then the Mughal rulers, appointed the members of various classes in the administration, whom were called as 'Mansabdars'.

- 1. Mansabdari :** According to Mansabdari system the posts, income and the position of a Mansabdar in the court was fixed. The word 'Mansabdar' means a rank or position. Mansabdars belonged with the civil and military department of the country.

#### **Categories of Zat and Sawar Mansabdars :**

- 1.** The first category of Mansabdars held equal Zat and Sawar i.e. 5000/5000.
- 2.** The second category of Mansabdars their Sawar mansab was more than the half of their Zat mansab i.e. 5000/3000. The third category of Mansabdars held their Sawar mansab less than the half of their Zat mansab i.e. 5000/2000.

- 2. Appointment, Promotion and Dismiss of the Mansabdars:** The Mughal emperors appointed the Mansabdars on their own or on the recommendation of the Mir Bakshi according to their qualification. The Mansabdar could rise from the low rank to high ranks. But the emperor could either demote the Mansabdars who did not do their work properly or could dismiss them from their posts.
- 3. Categories of Mansabdars:** The Mansabdars had 33 categories during the reign of Akbar emperor. The lowest rank of a Mansabdar was that of 10 and the highest was 10,000.
- 4. Duties of the Mansabdars:** The emperor could post the Mansabdars on any duty. They could be appointed in any administration department or asked to put them to present themselves in the court.
- 5. Pay:** The Mansabdars were given their salaries according to their ranks. Their salaries could be raised or deducted.

### Jahangir (1605-1627 A.D)

After the death of Akbar, his son Jahangir succeeded in Mughal throne. He ruled from 1605-1627 A.D.

**Conquests of Jahangir:** Jahangir tried to consolidated Mughal empire. He first crushed the rebellion of his son, Prince Khusrau. Next, he strengthened Mughal control over Avadh and Bengal. In 1613 A.D., he defeated Rana Amar Singh, the ruler of Mewar. But Jahangir allowed the Rana to rule over his territories on the condition that he would loyal to the Mughals. He also conquered Kangra in 1620 A.D..



**Design 14.6** Jahangir

Jahangir conquered the fort of Ahmadnagar to expand the Mughal influence in the Deccan. But Malik Amber military commander of Ahmadnagar, put up a stiff resistance and did not allow the Mughals conquer territories in the Deccan. Jahangir also lost Kandhar to the Persians.

### Nur-Jahan

Jahangir married Nur-Jahan in 1611 A.D. She was not only beautiful but also was an intelligent lady. She was very ambitious and took keen interest in the administration of the kingdom. Jahangir took her advice on all important issues. The royal decrees were issued at her order. Even coins began to be issued jointly in the name of Jahangir and Nur-Jahan.



**Design 14.7 :** Nur Jahan



## Shah Jahan (1628-1657 A.D.)

After the death of his father Jahangir, Shah Jahan succeeded to the Mughal throne in 1628 A.D. He had to face many revolts in Bundelkhand and Deccan. In 1628 A.D, Raja Jujhar Singh ruler of Bundelkhand revolted against Shah Jahan but he was defeated. In 1635 A.D. he again revolted but he was killed by the Mughals.



**Design 14.8** Shah Jahan

Shah Jahan invaded the Deccan and annexed Ahmadnagar in 1633 A.D. Bijapur and Golconda also acknowledged Mughal supremacy and signed a peace treaty with Shah Jahan.

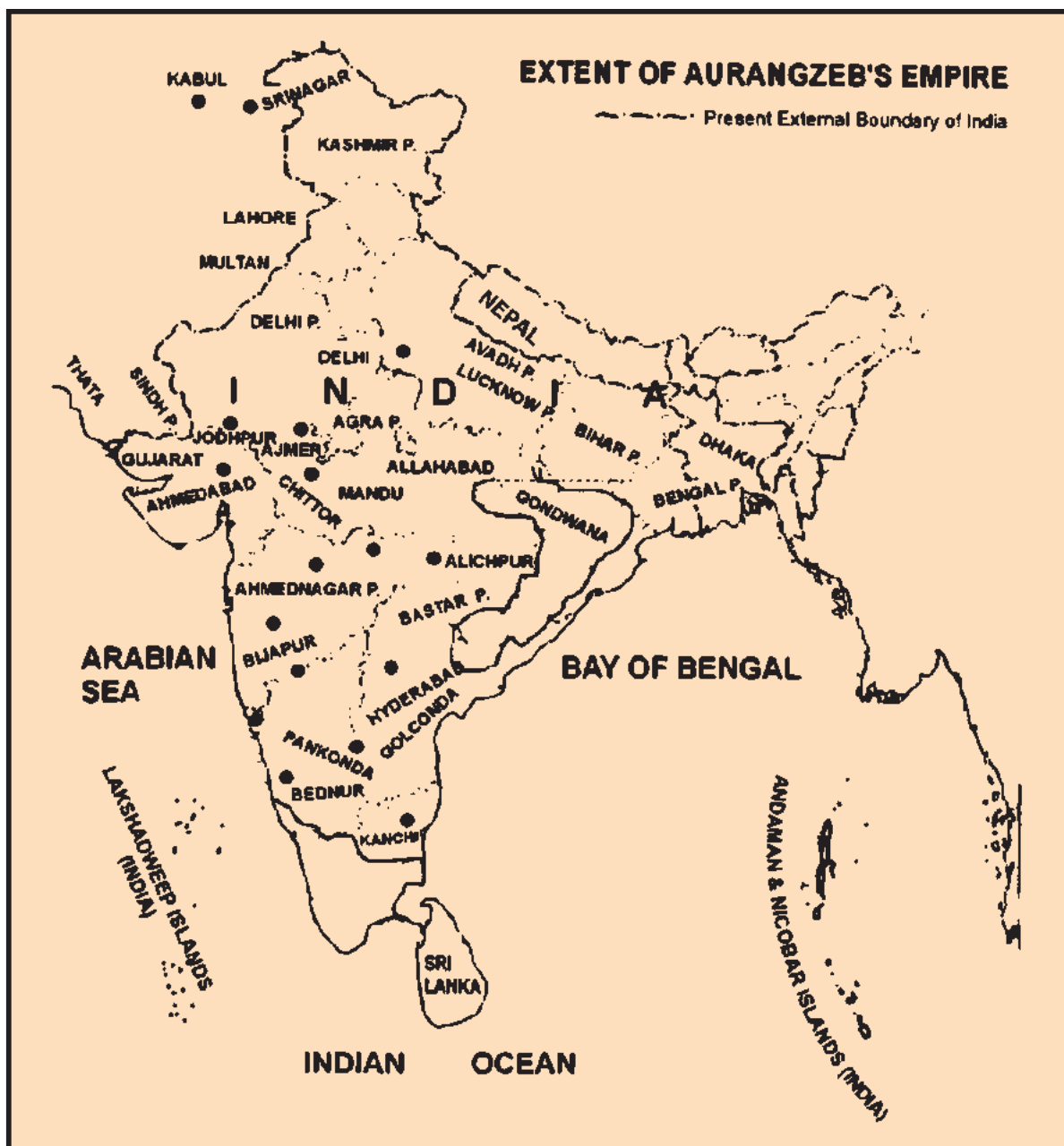
In 1657 A.D., Shah Jahan fell ill. A war of succession broke out among his sons. Aurangzeb imprisoned Shah Jahan at the Fort of Agra and he crowned himself the emperor.

## Aurangzeb (1658-1707 A.D.)

The last of the Great Mughals ruler was, Aurangzeb who ruled from 1658-1707 A.D. His empire covered nearly the whole of India. But he faced many troubles during his reign. In 1669 A.D. the Jats of the Mathura, Agra region rebelled against Aurangzeb. The rebellion was no doubt suppressed but the Jats continued their fighting against the Mughals.



**Design 14.9** Aurangzeb



**Design 14.9** Extent of Aurangzeb's empire

The Satnamis were a sect of saints who settled in Mewar and Narnaul. The prosecution of these saints forced the Satnamis to revolt against Aurangzeb but their revolt was crushed. The Bundelas in Bundelkhand also rose in revolt on account of the oppressive agrarian policy of Aurangzeb. For the time being Aurangzeb was successful in suppressing these revolts. The most powerful revolts were that of the Rajputs, The Marathas and the Sikhs were against the Aurangzeb. Most of the time, Aurangzeb busy in putting down these revolts.

Do you know why the Satnamis revolted against the Aurangzeb ?

### Aurangzeb and the Marathas

The Marathas of Maharashtra become powerful under the leadership of Shivaji. In 1674 A.D. Shivaji declared himself an independent ruler. In 1680 A.D. after the death of Shivaji his son Shambaji ascended the throne. The struggle between the Marathas and Mughals was still going on. Aurangzeb annexed Bijapur in 1686 A.D. and Golconda in 1687 A.D. In 1689 A.D. Aurangzeb got Shambaji captured and killed him and occupied many territories of the Marathas. But the Marathas continued their struggle first under the leadership of Raja Ram and later under the leadership of queen Tara Bai. After the death of Aurangzeb in 1707 A.D. the Marathas re-occupied most of the territories from the Mughals.

### Aurangzeb and the Sikhs

After Sri Guru Har Krishan Ji, Sri Guru Tegh Bahadur Ji became the ninth Guru of the Sikhs. Guru Ji, opposed the policy of religious persecution followed by Aurangzeb against Hindus. Guru Ji went to Aurangzeb for freedom and protection of Hindu religion. Aurangzeb asked Guru Ji to embrace Islam but Guru Ji refused to do so. Guru Ji was tortured too much by the Muslims. Consequently, on 11th November, 1675 A.D. Guru Ji was beheaded at Chandni Chowk in Delhi.

According to you why Aurangzeb beheaded Sri Guru Tegh Bahadur Ji ?

Thereafter Sri Guru Tegh Bahadur Ji's son Sri Guru Gobind Singh Ji became the tenth Guru of the Sikhs. In 1699 A.D. Sri Guru Gobind Singh Ji, created the **Khalsa Panth** to infuse the spirit of bravery in the coward humanity. A war broke up between the Sikhs and the Mughals at Chamkaur Sahib. In this fierce battle with the Mughals, two sons of Guru

Ji, Sahibzada Ajit Singh Ji and Sahibzada Jujhar Singh Ji were martyred and other two sons Sahibzada Zorawar Singh Ji and Sahibzada Fateh Singh Ji were buried alive in the walls at Sirhind.

After Aurangzeb's death in 1707 A.D. his successor Bahadur Shah established friendly relations with the Sikhs. One of the Pathans stabbed a dagger in the stomach of Guru Ji at the order of Faujdar Wazir Khan of Sirhind. Due to this Guru Ji left for his heavenly abode in 1708 A.D.

Thereafter Banda Singh Bahadur carried on his struggle against the Mughals.

### **Aurangzeb's Successors :**

The successors of Aurangzeb were very weak and unable to handle the affairs of a vast empire. As a result, Nadir Shah, the ruler of Afghanistan invaded India in 1739 A.D. This invasion proved disastrous for the Mughal empire because Ahmad Shah Abdali of Afghanistan also invaded India.

#### **Points to Remember :**

1. Babar was the first ruler of the Mughal Empire.
2. Humayun was the son of Babar.
3. Bairam Khan performed the coronation of Akbar in 1556 A.D. at Kalanaur (Gurdaspur).
4. Shah Jahan ruled from 1628-1657 A.D.
5. In 1689 A.D. Aurangzeb assassinated Shambaji and occupied many territories of the Marathas.



#### **I. Answer the following questions**

1. Why did Daulat Khan Lodhi and Rana Sanga invite Babar to attack on India ?

2. What do you know about Babar's conquests ?
3. What do you mean by Mansabdari System ?
4. Write about the conquests of Akbar.
5. What do you mean by the Agrarian system of the Mughals.
6. Illustrate how Akbarnama and Ain-i-Akbari are used to reconstruct history.

**Glossary :**

Mughal

Mansabdar

Zat

Sawar

**II. Fill in the blanks**

1. Tuzuk-i-Babari is the autobiography of \_\_\_\_\_.
2. The battle of Kanwaha was fought between Babar and \_\_\_\_\_.
3. Akbar defeated Hemu in\_\_\_\_\_.
4. Babar wrote\_\_\_\_\_.
5. Abul Fazle wrote\_\_\_\_\_.

**III. Write True or False for each statement**

1. The Mughals came to India in 1525 A.D. ☐
2. Daulat Khan Lodhi and Rana Sanga invited Babar to invade India. ☐
3. Sher Shah Suri was a Mughal ruler. ☐
4. The Rajputs were very well treated during the reign of Aurangzeb. ☐
5. The Deccan policy of Aurangzeb strengthened the Mughal empire. ☐



1. On the outline map of India, show the extent of Mughal Empire.
2. Collect the pictures of Mughal Emperors and paste in your note book.





## Varieties of Monumental Architecture

We find a variety of Monumental Architecture in different parts of the India such as temples, Gurdwaras, forts, palaces, havelis, gardens etc. These have been built in different styles and varieties of material have been used for their construction. Even different types of engineering and construction skills, art and organization and resources that were employed to built them.

Now we shall study the main buildings constructed during the period 800-1200 A.D. then from 1206-1526 A.D. and from 1526-1707 A.D.

### Monumental Architecture in North India (800-1200 A.D.)

During the period from 800-1200 A.D. many temples were built in North India. The Vishnu temple at Jagannath Puri, Lingaraj Temple at Bhubaneswar, the Sun Temple at Konark, the Mahadeva Temple at Khajuraho in Bundelkhand, Tejpal Temple at Mount Abu, are the important temples of North India.



**Design 15.1** Lingaraj Temple, Bhubaneswar

The style of temple architecture was known as **Nagara**. A good example of this style is the Khajuraho temple in Madhya Pradesh. These temples, were built by the Chandella rulers.

According to you what is Nagara style ?

Lingaraja Temple at Bhubaneswar, the Sun Temple at Konark and the Jagannath Temple at Puri are also of the Nagara style.

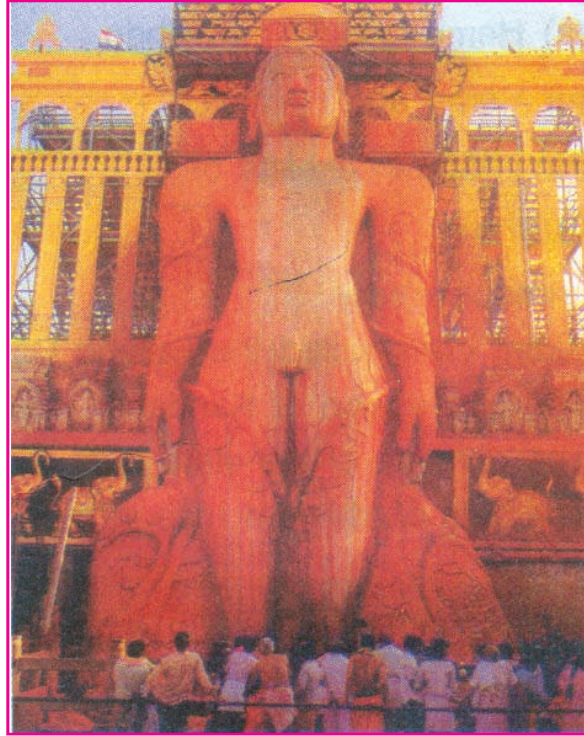
Tejpal Temple at Mount Abu (Rajasthan) was built by Solanki rulers of Gujarat. There are many temples. They are made of white Marbles which show excellent and delicate workmanship. The walls of the temples are carved with idols while the outside of the walls are main. The statue of Gomateshvara at Shravanabelagola, Karnataka is one of the images in the world.



**Design 15.2** Sun Temple at Konark

### **Monumental Architecture in South India (800-1200 A.D.)**

The Pallavas, Pandyas and the Cholas were great patrons of art and architecture during this period (800-1200 A.D.). The Raj Rajeshwar Temple built by the Rajraja, Gangaikonda Cholapuram Temple built by Rajendra-I and the Kailash Temple at Ellora built by the Rashtrakutas are famous for their beauty and art.



**Design 15.3** The statue of Gumateshvara at Shravanabelagola, Karnataka.

The Chola rulers were great builders of temples. These temples were built in the Dravidian Style. Rajeshwar Temple was built by Chola ruler, Rajraja-I in honour of Lord Shiva. The Gateway of the temple was called Gopuram. It rises to a height of about 94 meters from the ground.



**Design 15.4** Kailash Temple, Ellora

The Kailash Temple at Ellora is a specimen of the Rashtrakutas architecture. It was built by the Rastakuta king Krishan-I. The temple is

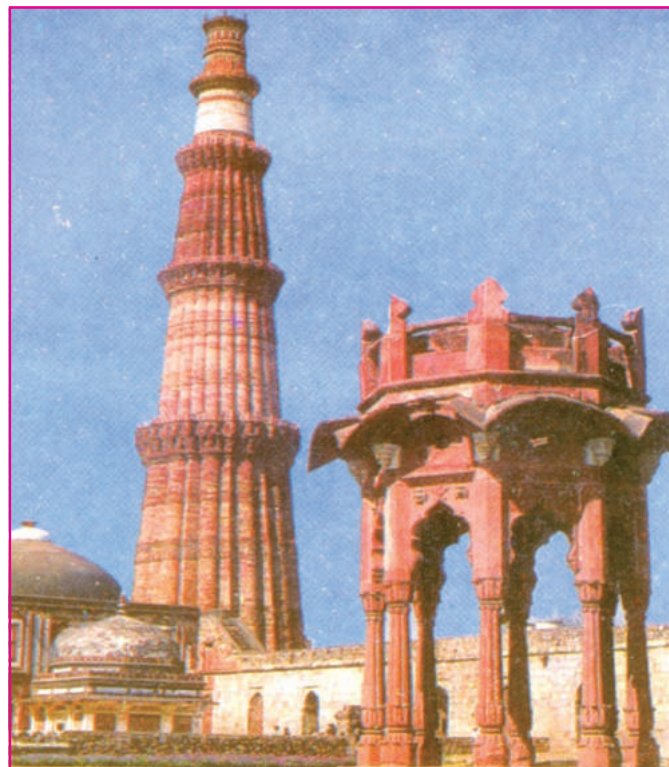


built to cut Rocks. This temple has been called one of the architectural wonder of the world.

### Monumental Architecture under Delhi Sultanate (1206-1526 A.D.)

During the period of Delhi Sultanate there was a remarkable development in the field of architecture. The Turks and the Afghans introduced new styles and techniques of architecture in India. The amalgamation of these and Indian architecture created a new style which called Indo-Islamic architecture.

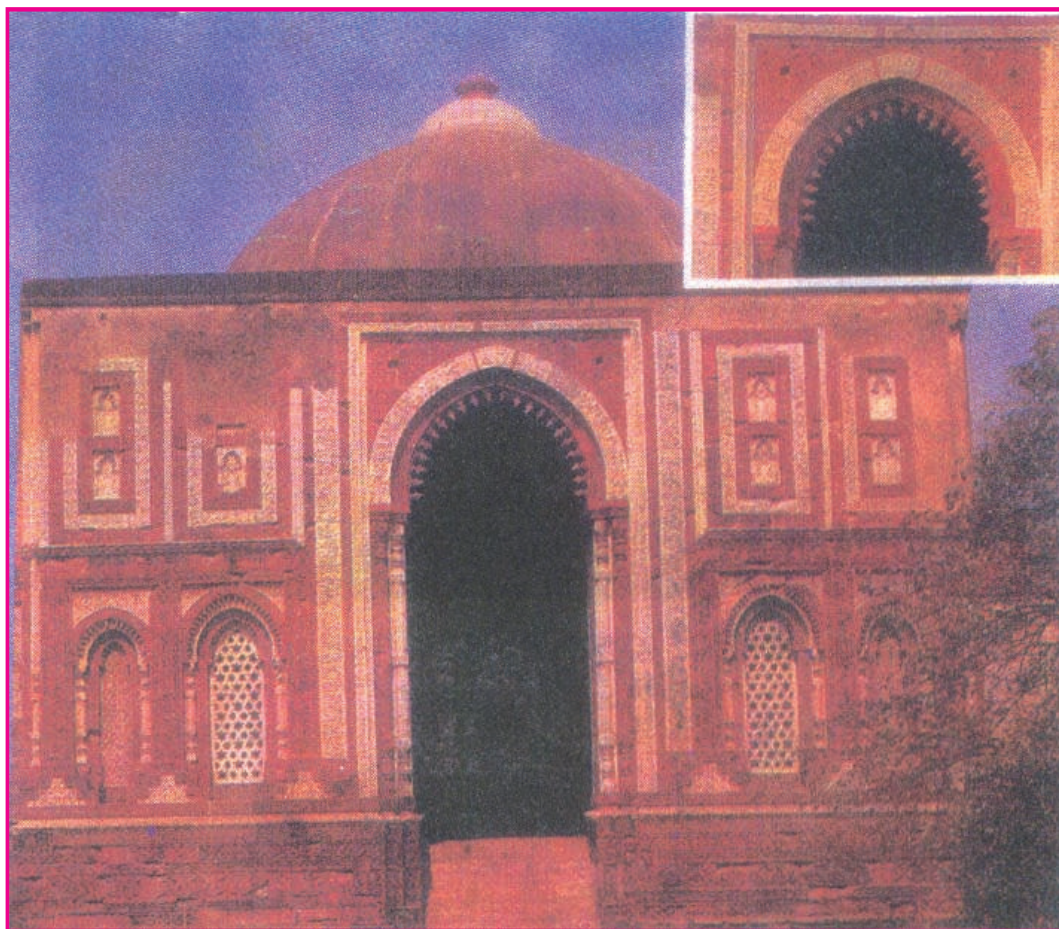
During this period (1206-1526 A.D.) many types of buildings such as palaces, forts, graveyards, mosques etc. were built. The main features of these buildings were domes, lofty and minars. During this period the Sultans of Delhi built many monuments. Qutab-ud-din Aibak built at Delhi **Quwat-ul-Islam** mosque. The sacred aiyatas from holy Quran were written on its walls. He built **Dhai-Din-Ka-Jhonpara** mosque at Ajmer. He also started building **Qutab Minar** at Mehrauli, near Delhi but due to sudden death of Aibak this work completed by Iltutmish his successor. It has five stories and is 70 meters in height.



**Design 15.5** Qutab Minar, Mehrauli

Suppose you are a craftsman and standing on a platform about fifty meters high from the ground which is made of wood with the help of bamboo and rope. You have engrave a inscription below the first balcony of the Qutab Minar then what will you do ?

During Ala-ud-din Khalji's reign the art and architecture opened new vistas. He built many buildings. Out of them **Alahi Darwaja** is very famous. It is made of red stones and Marbels. This darwaza presents the best specimen of its art. He built a palace of thousand pillars, **Hauz-i-Khas** and **Jamait Khana** Mosque.



**Design 15.6** Alahi Darwaja

Ghias-ud-din Tughlaq built a new city in Delhi known as Tughlaqabad. Muhammad-bin-Tughlaq built a new city names Jahanpanah, Firoz Tughlaq also built new cities like Firozabad, Firoza, Hissar and Jaunpur. He also built many mosques, schools and bridges.



The Sultans of Sayyad and Lodhi dynasties built tombs of Mubark Shah and Muhammad Shah Tombs were built during the Sayyad period. Tombs of Sikandar Lodhi, Moth-ki-Masjid, Bara Gumbad were built during the Lodhi rule.

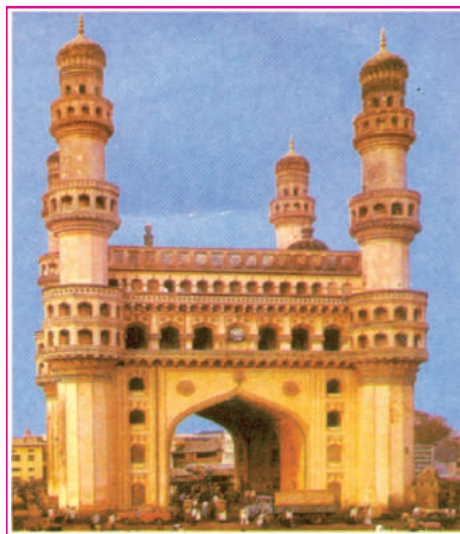
### Architecture of the Deccan

In the South India the rulers of Bahamani and Vijayanagar built many buildings. In the Bahamani state such as **Jama-Masjid**, the **Charminar**, the **Madrassa of Mahmud Gawan** etc. were built. The Tomb of the Firoz Shah at Gulbarga is the fine specimen of architecture. The rulers of Vijayanagar also built **Hazara Rama** and **Vithal Swami Temple** etc. are well known.

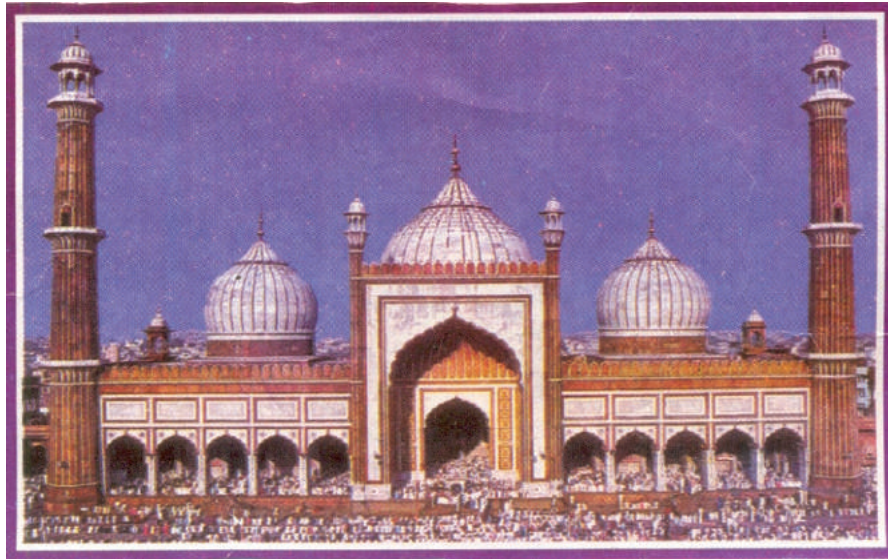
**Mosque :** Mosque is the word of Arabic language, which means a place where the Muslims perform prayer of God. Numerous Muslims read the Namaj in the Jama-Masjid. During Namaj reading Muslims stand turning their face towards the Mecca. Mecca is situated in the west of India.

### Monumental Architecture under the Mughals (1526-1707 A.D.)

The Mughal emperors built beautiful forts, palaces, tombs and mosques. Mughal emperor Akbar was a great lover of architecture. He built many forts and buildings in red stone. Among these the buildings of **Fatehpur Sikri**, **Jama Masjid**, **Panch Mahal**, **Diwan-i-Aam** and **Diwan-i-Khas** are very famous. He also built a huge gate which is called **Buland Darwaza**. His buildings are mixture of Iranian and Indian style.



**Design 15.7** Charminar, Hyderabad

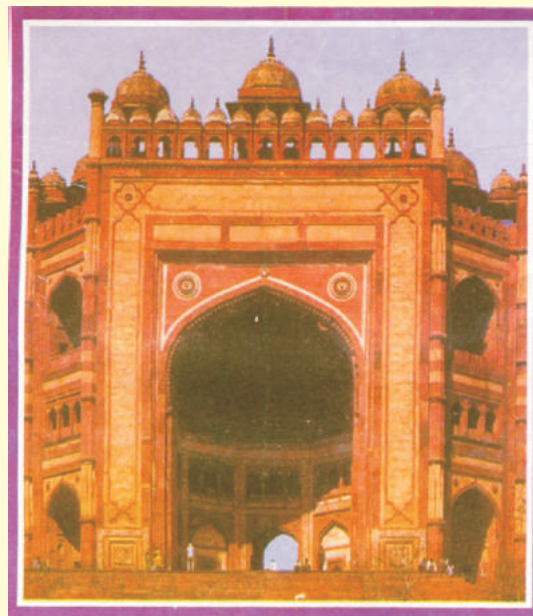


**Design 15.8** Jama-Masjid, New Delhi

Jahangir built the **Tomb of Akbar** at Sikandrabad and the Tomb of **Itmad-ud-Daulah** in Agra with white marble.

#### **A case study of Shah Jahan's Patronage of Architecture**

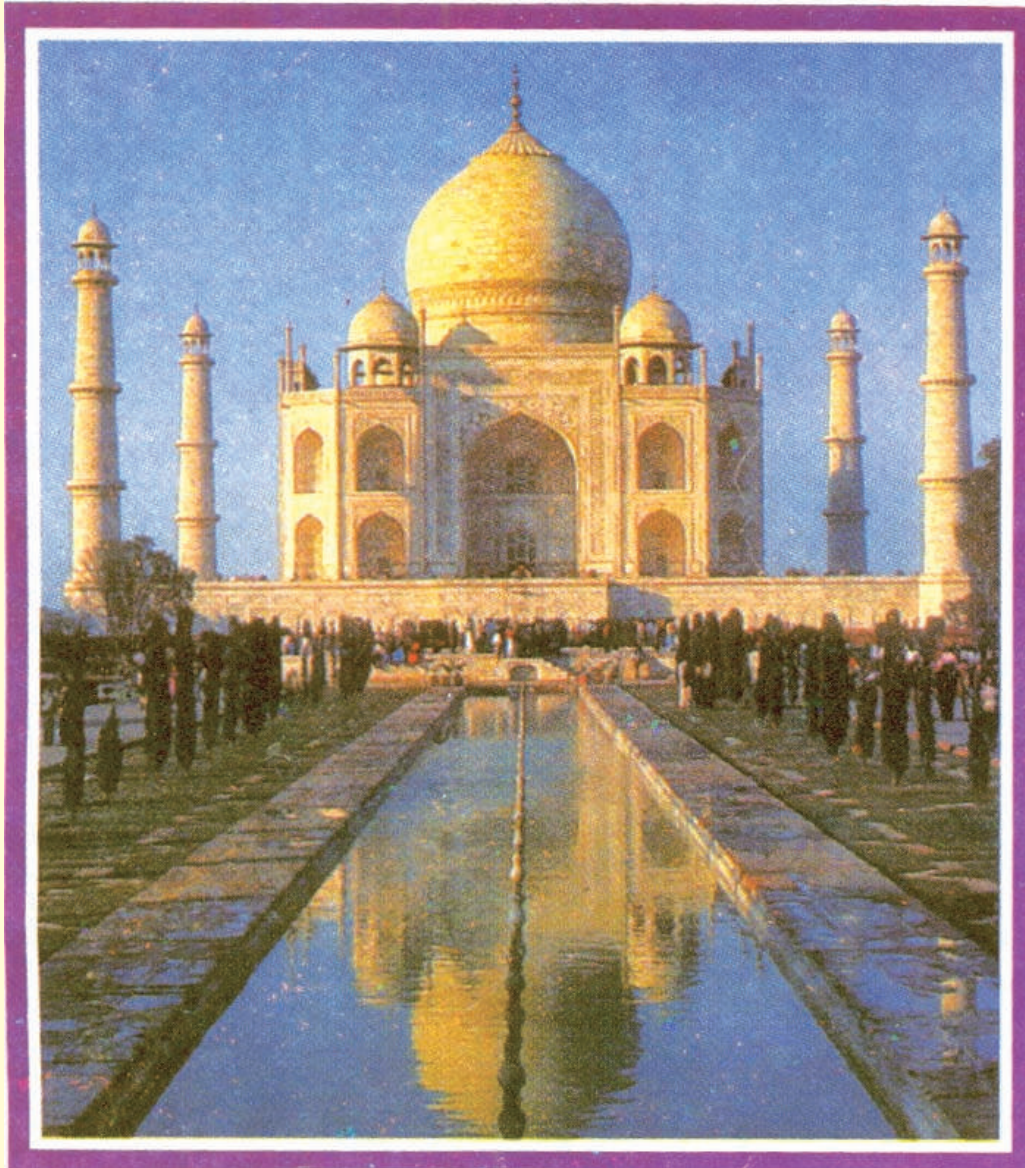
Shah Jahan was the greatest builders among the Mughals. He was called the Prince of the builders. He built many buildings during his reign such as **Diwan-i-Aam**, **Diwan-i-Khas** in the fort of Agra, the **Jama Masjid**, the **Moti Masjid** and the **Taj Mahal**. His buildings had more delicacy, beauty and grace. Among all the buildings of Shah



**Design 15.9** Buland Darwaza, Fatehpur Sikri



Jahan the **Taj Mahal** on the bank of river Yamuna at Agra was the most famous. Shah Jahan built it in the memory of his beloved queen Mumtaz Mahal. 20,000 artists worked for 22 years for the construction of the Taj Mahal and a sum of rupees 3 crore was spent on it.



**Design 15.10** Taj Mahal, Agra

The Taj Mahal is a mixture of many architectural styles. It is built of white marble. It is decorated with about twenty varieties of precious stone were imported from other countries. It is one of the seven wonders of the world.

Do you know why the Taj Mahal is one of the Seven Wonders of the World ?

### Red Fort

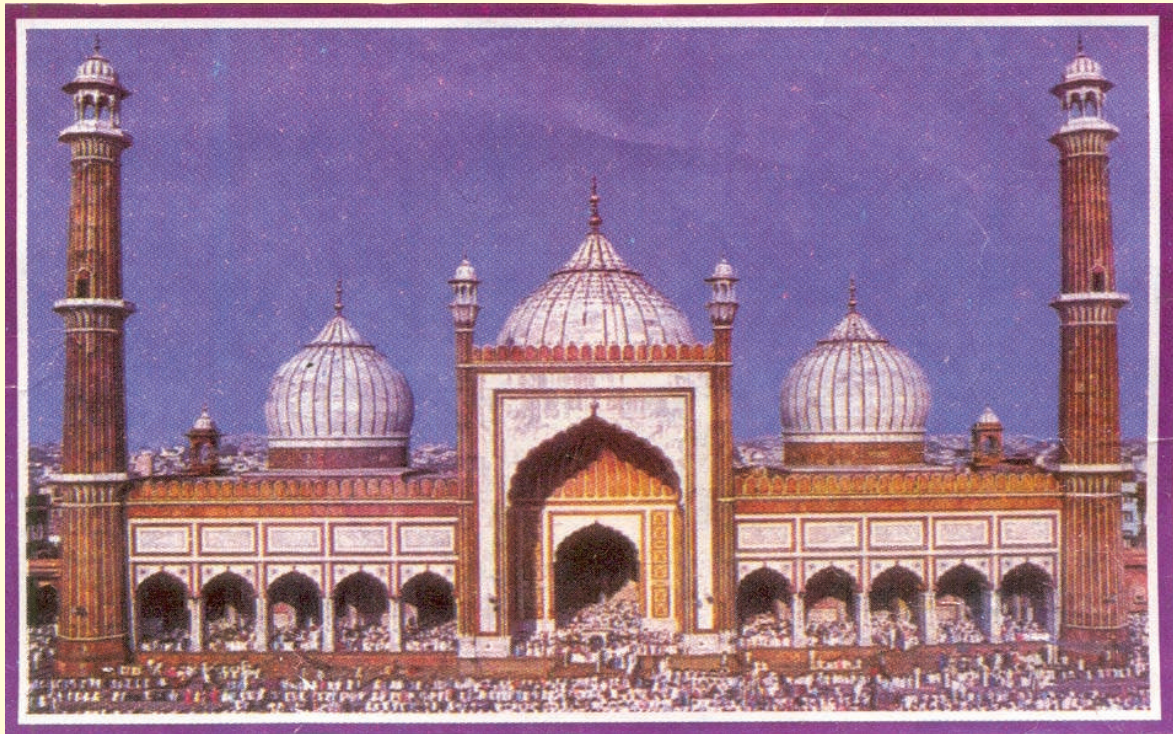
In 1639 A.D. this fort was built by Shah Jahan of red stone on the bank of Yamuna in Delhi. It has various beautiful buildings such as the **Rang Mahal**, the **Diwan-i-Aam**, the **Diwan-i-Khas**, **Shah Burj**, **Khwabgah** etc. Among of these the **Diwan-i-Khas** is the most famous Shah Jahan's building. It is decorated with precious stones, gems and gold, silver things.



**Design 15.11** Red fort, Delhi

The **Moti Masjid** was built by Shah Jahan in the fort of Agra. It was built in four years at the cost of Rs. 3,00,000. It is built in white marble.





**Design 15.12** Jama Masjid, Delhi

The **Musamman Burj** is a beautiful Burj of white marble. From this palace the Taj Mahal is visible. In 1660 A.D. Shah Jahan died as a prisoner in this Burj.

Shahjahanabad city was founded by Shah Jahan in 1639 A.D. Skilled artisans, masons and workmen were called far and near to assist constructing the city.

**Jama Masjid** is one of the largest mosques in India. It stands on high platform. It was completed in ten years.

**Tomb of Jahangir** was built at Shahdara in Pakistan. It was an early tomb built by Shah Jahan. It was decorated with white marble.

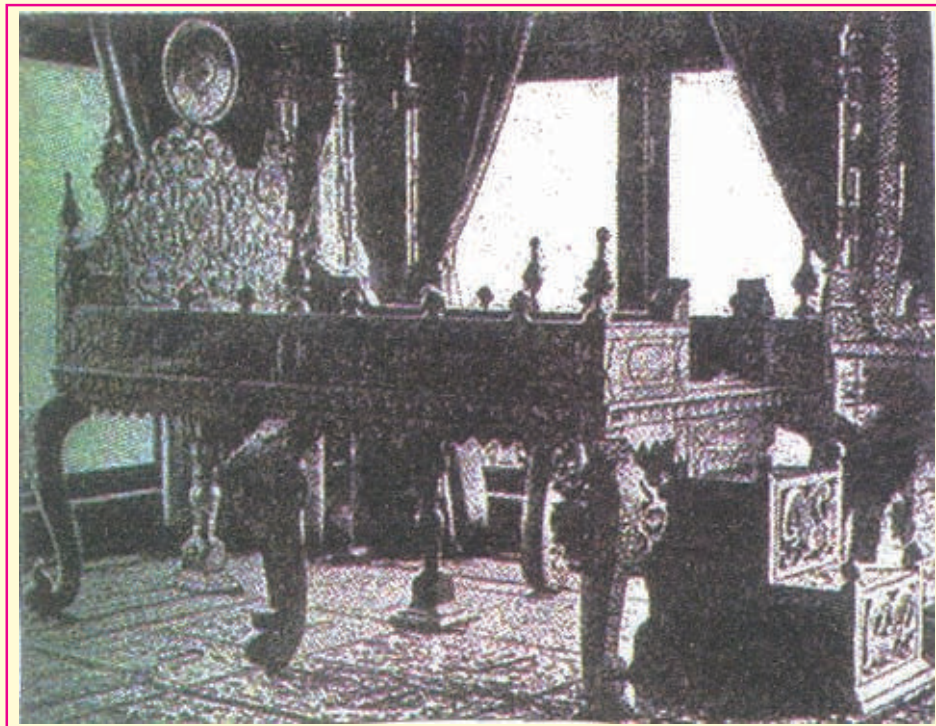
Shah Jahan was interested in gardens. He laid out various gardens. Some of the famous were those of **Shalimar Garden** in Delhi and **Wazir Garden** in Kashmir. Some gardens were laid out in the Taj Mahal and the Red Fort.





**Design 15.13 : Shalimar Garden in Delhi**

The **Peacock Throne** of Shah Jahan was kept in Diwan-i-Khas. It was completed in 7 years at a cost of about hundred lakh rupees and built of white marble. In 1739 A.D. Nadir Shah carried it away to Persia.



**Design 15.13** Peacock Throne

**Points to Remember**

1. The Vishnu Temple at Jagannath Puri, Lingraj Temple at Bhubaneswar, Sun Temple at Konark and Tejpal Temple at Mount Abu were built in North India during the period of 800-1200 A.D.
2. During the period of 800-1200 A.D. the Rajeshwar Temple, Gangaikonda Cholapuram Temple, Kailash Temple at Ellora etc. an important temples were built in South India.
3. During the Sultanate period from 1206-1526 A.D. Quwat-ul-Islam Mosque, Dhair-Din-Ka-Jhonpara mosque, Qutab Minar, Alahi Darwaja, a palace of thousand pillars, Hauz-i-Khas and Jamait Khan Mosque, Jahanpanah, Tughlaqabad, Ferozabad, Hisar and Jaunpur etc. cities were situated in India.
4. During the Mughal reign Jama-Masjid, Panch Mahal, Diwan-I-Aam, Buland Darwaza, Itmad-up-Daulah Tomb etc. were built in India.



**I. Answer the following Questions**

1. Which are the main temples of the Northern India ?
2. Describe the main features of the Indian-Muslim architecture.
3. Which are the temples of the Southern India ?
4. Make list of the monuments constructed during the Delhi Sultanate.
5. Why Mughal Emperor Shah Jahan is called the 'Prince of Builders' ?

**II. Fill in the Blanks**

1. The Birhadeshvara Temple is situated at \_\_\_\_\_.
2. The Qutab Minar was completed by \_\_\_\_\_.
3. \_\_\_\_\_ near Agra, was built by Akbar as his new capital.
4. The Buland Darwaja is situated \_\_\_\_\_.
5. The Taj Mahal was built by \_\_\_\_\_ in the memory of \_\_\_\_\_.
6. Jahangir built \_\_\_\_\_.

**III. Write True or False for each statement.**

1. Turks and Afghans introduced new styles and techniques of architecture in India. ☐
2. The Temples at Khajuraho were built by the rulers of the Chandella dynasty. ☐
3. Ala-ud-din Khalji built a new capital at Siri. ☐
4. Muhammad Tughlaq built Tughlaqabad. ☐
5. The Dravidian style of architecture was used in the Cholas temples. ☐

**IV. Match the following columns**

Column A	Column B
1. Lingaraja Temple	1. Bhubneshwar
2. Birhadeshvara Temple	2. Delhi
3. Adhai Din Ka Jhonpara	3. Fatehpur Sikri
4. Adina Masjid	4. Khajuraho
5. Humayun's Tomb	5. Madurai
6. Moti Masjid	6. Agra
7. Red Fort	7. Tanjore
8. Taj Mahal	8. Ajmer



1. Collect pictures of the monumental architecture of the Mughal Period and paste them in your note book.
2. Draw the Taj Mahal.





After the discovery of agriculture early man was encouraged to live in village near his fields. With the passage of time when a large number of people started to live in these villages. Then many of these villages developed into towns. Gradually some of among these towns flourished due to the activities of religious persons, traders, craftsmen and the ruling class. They flourished as court towns some as pilgrimage centres, some as port cities and some as trading towns or cities.

### Sources

Accounts of foreign travellers such as **Barnier** help us to know about the administration during the Mughal period. Accounts of a Portuguese travellers Duarte Barbosa and Ralph Fitch an English traveller who travelled India give us information about the urban history of this period.

William Baffin tells us about Mughals administration. Sir Thomas Roe and Hondiu's map of the Mughal Empire shows the extents like Thatta, Lahore, Surat and Multan.

Mughal official decrees about land revenue and land grants give us information about new and old towns.

### Court Towns or capital Towns

Harappa and Mohenjodaro were the capital towns of the Indus Valley people. In the vedic period Ayodhya and Indraprastha were as the capital towns. In the 600 B.C. the sixteen Mahajanapadas had their own court towns. Among of these were very famous like Kausambi, Pateliputra and Vaishali etc. Under the Rajput rulers (800-1200 A.D.) Ajmer, Kanauj, Tripuri, Delhi, Agra, Fatehpur Sikri developed as the court towns.



Make a list of cities of your district and classify them as administrative centres, temple cities and pilgrimage centres.

In South India, Kanchi, Badami, Kalyani, Vengi, Devagiri, Manyakhet, Tanjore and Madurai etc. acted as the court cities.

Under the Delhi Sultanate Lahore and Delhi developed as the capital cities. During the Mughal period Delhi, Agra, Fatehpur Sikri acted as their capital towns.

### **Port Cities**

India has various port cities because it has seas on its three sides. On the western coast of India Goa, Cochin, Surat, Broach, Sopara etc. were the main port cities in the medieval period.

On the eastern coast of India Vishakapatnam and Tamralipti (now Tamluk in Bengal) were the main sea ports during the medieval period.

### **Pilgrimage Centres**

The Nankana Sahib (Now in Pakistan), Amritsar, Kurukshetra, Haridwar, Badrinath, Kedarnath, Mathura, Banaras, Jagannath Puri, Dwarka Puri etc. towns developed as pilgrimage centres.

### **Commercial Towns**

A large number of trading towns established in the medieval India. Among these the most famous were like Lahore, Multan, Delhi, Agra, Surat, Ahmedabad, Ahmednagar, Goa, Daman, Diu etc.

#### **Commercial Cities or Centres :**

There are the places where goods are being bought and sold which come from the various productive centres.

### **Traders and Craftsmen**

Indian traders and craftsmen played an important role in the economic condition of the country. Indian craftsmen were expert in producing goods of various fine quality. They were perfect in the field of textile Industry. Their woollen, cotton and silk cloth was very famous in the world. They had great mastery over the manufacture of leather articles. Indian craftsmen also could produce fine leather and leather articles.

The art of making metals articles was flourished with successfully during the medieval period. The black-smiths and gold-smiths produced the fine quality. The Indian traders took these manufacturing goods to other countries. As a result they helped India to became rich.

The traders and craftsmen of India had organized themselves into their own guilds which helped them to produce articles of fine quality so that no country could match them in the field of trade.

### **Guild :**

An organization in which the all traders have same occupation.

## **Case Study of Lahore, Amritsar and Surat**

### **Lahore**

Lahore is a famous city of Pakistan. The city was a main centre of trade and culture of India in early medieval period. It was the capital of Hindushahi Kingdom during the invasion of Turks on India. The Subuktgin defeated Jaipal, ruler of Hindushahi dynasty kingdom in Punjab in 1001 A.D. Subuktgin's son Mahmud Ghaznavi defeated Jaipal and his successor in 1008 A.D. after the Mahmud Gaznavi, Khusro Malik ruled over Lahore who defeated Muhammad Ghor in 1186 A.D.

During the regin of Qutb-ud-din Aibak and Iltutmish rulers Lahore was a capital of slave dynasty. Iltutmish made Lahore his capital instead of Delhi. Daulat Khan Lodhi was a governor of Lahore,

Lahore was a capital of Punjab province before Mughals period. In 1761 A.D. the Sikhs conquered the Lahore. In 1799 A.D. Maharaja Ranjit Singh conquered Lahore and made it his capital. After the defeat of the Sikhs, in the second Anglo-Sikh war the governor general Lord Dalhauji had read out the declaration on the 29th March 1849 A.D. In 1849 A.D. British captured Lahore. Lahore remained the capital of Punjab province 1849 A.D. to 1947 A.D. Lahore became a part of Pakistan after the partition of India in 1947 A.D.

## Amritsar

Amritsar is an important pilgrimage of the Sikhs. In 1577 A.D. it was founded by the fourth Sikh Guru, Sri Guru Ram Das Ji. In the beginning, Amritsar's name was Ramdaspura or Chak Guru Ram Das. Sri Guru Ram Das Ji planned to construct two sarovars Amritsar and Santokhsar at Ramdaspura. Sri Guru Ram Das Ji left for his heavenly abode then the fifth Guru, Sri Guru Arjan Dev Ji completed his work. In 1604 A.D. Adi Granth Sahib was placed in Sri Harmandar Sahib by Guru Ji. In 1609, the sixth Guru, Sri Guru Hargobind ji constructed Akal Takhat near Sri Harmandar Sahib. Here Guru Ji would accept horses and arms from the masands. Political affairs were discussed here. Even in these days political affairs of the Sikhs are also declared here.



**Design 16.1** Sri Harmandar Sahib, Amritsar

## Surat

Surat is an important port and trade town. It is situated in the state of Gujarat. It is a great centre of industry. Shiva ji Maratha plundered it twice and he got more wealth. In the 12th century Persians occupied Surat. In 1512 A.D. the portuguese occupied Surat. In 1573 A.D. Surat was occupied by the Mughal emperor Akbar and under his rule, it emerged as one of the major commercial cities of India. The English obtained trade concessions from Jahangir at Surat in 1612 A.D. The Portuguese, Dutch and French established their settlements in Surat. In 1759 A.D. the English occupied the fort at Surat. In 1842 A.D. the English completely occupied the Surat. There are an important **Masjid of Khawja Sahib** and the **Masjid of nine Sayyads**. The Temple of Swami Narain and the old temples of the Jains are very famous. Surat is an important industrial and commercial centre.

### Points to Remember

1. **Court Towns** : During the medieval India Harappa, Mohenjodaro, Ayodhya, Inderaprastra, Kausambi, Patliputra, Vaishali, Kanchi, Badami, Kalyani, Vengi, Devagiri, Manyakhet, Tenjore and Madurai, Lahore, Delhi, Agra, Fatehpur Sikri etc. acted as capital towns.
2. **Port Cities** : India has Goa, Cochin, Surat, Broach, Sopara etc. port cities in the medieval period.
3. **Pilgrimage Centres** : The Nankana Sahib (Now in Pakistan), Amritsar, Kurukshetra, Haridwar, Badrinath, Mathura, Banaras, Jagannath Puri, Dwarka Puri etc. were as pilgrimage centres in the medieval India.
4. **Commercial Towns** : Lahore, Multan, Delhi, Agra, Surat, Ahmedabad, Ahmadnagar, Goa, Daman Diu etc. were famous commercial towns in medieval India.

5. Lahore was the commercial and cultural town of India during the medieval period.
6. Amritsar is a famous pilgrimage center of the Sikhs.
7. Surat is a famous port and commercial center of India from the medieval period.



**I. Answer these questions.**

1. Name any four pilgrimage centres.
2. Write names of any two capital towns of Mughal empire.
3. Which Guru laid the foundation of Amritsar and When ?
4. Where the Surat is situated ?

**II. Fill in the Blanks.**

1. Amritsar was founded by \_\_\_\_\_.
2. From 1585 to \_\_\_\_\_, Lahore was the capital of Akbar's Empire.
3. Surat is a \_\_\_\_\_.
4. Nankana Sahib is situated in \_\_\_\_\_.
5. India had many port \_\_\_\_\_.

**III. Write true or false against the each statement.**

1. Mahenjodaro was a capital city of Indus valley people. ☐
2. In 1629, Shah Jahan made a new capital in Delhi. ☐
3. Surat was an important pilgrimage centre. ☐
4. Fatehpur Sikri was capital town of Mughals. ☐
5. Dehli was a commercial town in Medieval period. ☐





1. Make a list of the following (four each).
  - a. Capital towns.
  - b. Port towns.
  - c. Commercial towns.
  - d. Pilgrimage centres.





During the medieval period, in the many parts of Indian Subcontinent, society was divided in many classes on the basis of occupation. Therefore, the gap between rich and poor happened to increase. During Delhi Sultanate and Mughal Empire society was divided in many classes.

### **Tribal Society**

During the medieval period many tribal societies emerged in many parts of the Indian Subcontinent. These societies were not divided in classes. These tribes did not obey the social rules and customs imposed by the Brahmins. Each tribe had its own brotherhood. Agriculture was the main occupation of the all tribes. But the people of many tribes liked the occupation of hunting-gathering or animal husbandary. People of tribes used to migrate from one place to another place in search of their livelihood, who were called 'Nomad'.

During medieval period some powerful tribes used to dwell in forests, on mountains and in deserts. The people of those tribes used to quarrel with people of powerful societies. But both societies used to depend on each other to fulfill their needs.

### **Who were the tribes ?**

During the medieval period in Indian subcontinent, the tribals did not maintain any written records about them. They only performed their customs and social traditions, which continued from generation to generation. These customs and social traditions helps the historians to write the history of the tribal society.

During the medieval period, the people of tribal society used to live in the all parts of Indian Subcontinent. For example tribes, nomads and itinerant groups included the Bhils, Gonds, Ahoms, Kui, Kolis, Kuki and Orans etc. are more common in Manipur, Meghalaya, Madhya Pradesh, Nagaland, Dadra and Nagar Haveli etc. Khokhar, Gakhar, Langah, Arghoon, Bloach etc. tribes lived in many parts of Punjab.

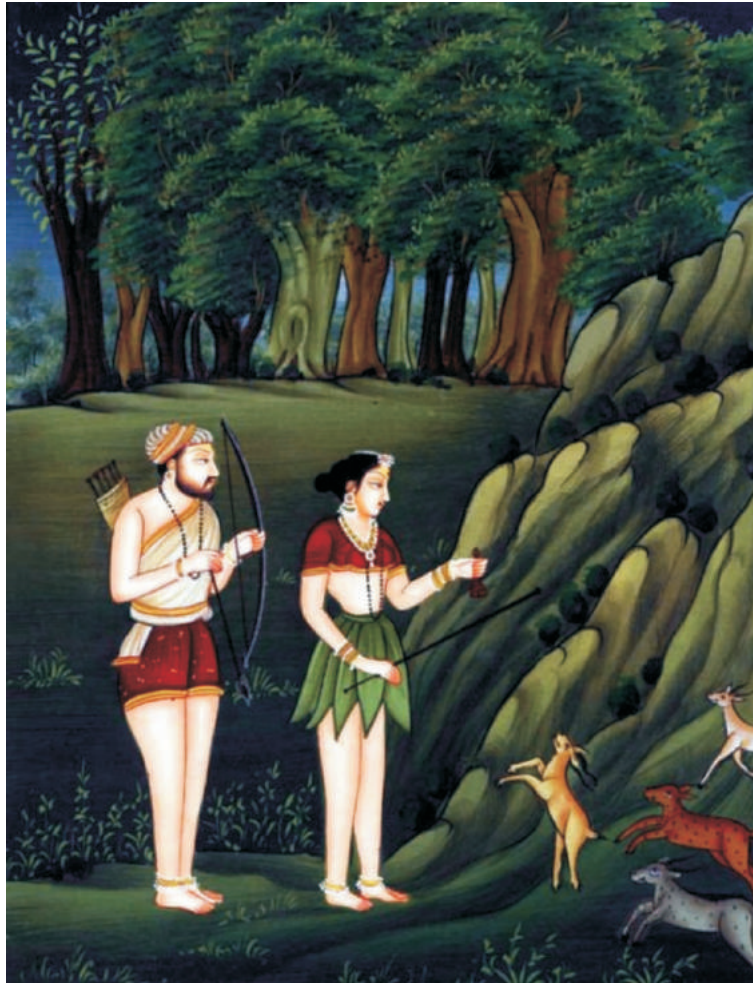
These tribes were further divided in various families. Each family had its own head. For example a tribe named Gaddi Gadria used to live in Western Himalaya.

Like this Ahom, Naga and many other tribes used to live in the Northern-Eastern parts of Indian Subcontinent.

Till 12th century a char named ruler dynasty emerged in territories of present Bihar and Jharkhand. In 1591 A.D. Mughal Emperor Akbar invaded char ruler dynasty and he became victorious. Later on, Mughal Emperor Aurangzeb captured the forts of char ruler dynasty. Munda and Santhal tribes were main amongst the tribes who lived in the territories of the present Bihar and Jharkhand.

Kuli, Brade etc. tribes used to live in the hilly areas of Karnataka and Maharashtra. The people of Kuli tribe used to live in some parts of Gujarat. Koraga, Batar, Marwar etc. tribes also lived in the some parts of Gujarat.

In medieval period, a tribe named Bhil used to live in the western and central part of the Indian Sub continent. In the end of sixth century many people of this tribe started the profession of farming and landlordism. Several people of the Bhil tribe had the occupation of hunter-gatherer.



**Design : 17.1** People of Bhil tribe, hunting during the night time.

In the medieval period, the people of Gond tribe used to live in the present Madhya Pradesh, Chhatisgarh, Maharashtra and Andhra Pradesh.

### **Life of the Nomadic and Itinerants group**

In the medieval period, Nomads, occupation was grazing the animals. They went far away for grazing the animals. They made both ends with animals breeding. They bought corn, clothes, utensils like goods from the farmers in exchange of butter made from milk of animals and wood etc.

During this period. Nomads went from one place to another place for selling their goods by loading on the animals.

What do you know about how the farmers transported their corn from villages to cities for sale ?

In the medieval period, the people of Grocer dynasty were the famous nomadic merchants among the several dynasties of the nomadic people. For example during the reign of Ala-ud-din Khalji, a ruler of Delhi Sultanate, the Grocers used to transport the corn by loading on the bulls for selling in the cities. During war time, they used to transport eatables on the bulls for the Mughal army.

In the medieval period, the people of Pastoral tribe tamed cows, horses etc. and sold them. Besides this, the people of many other tribes sold mats made of Willow Sacchrum, Munja, gunny bags and ropes. Dancers, Jugglers and Singers presented their arts in villages and cities to make their both ends meet.

### **Social Changes-New Castes and Classes :**

During medieval period, demand increased for new craftsmen due to economic and social changes in the Indian Continent. As a result, new casts emerged in the society.

### **Tribes, Nomads and Itinerant Groups**

These tribes, nomads and itinerant groups are more common in Assam, Manipur, Meghalaya, Madhya Pradesh, Nagaland, Dadra and Nagar Havelli etc. Among the tribal people nomads and itinerant groups included the Bhils, Gonds, Ahoms, Kui, Kolis, Kuki and Orans etc. Mostly they live in forests. The nomads move from one place to another place with their animals.

In order to help these people government has provided many facilities to them such as Vocational Training Institutions are opened in tribal areas. Bank loans are given to them so that they can improve their own economic condition. About 7½% jobs are reserved for these people. Some seats are reserved for them in the educational institutions. Even certain constituencies in Lok Sabha and the State Assemblies are reserved for scheduled tribe candidates.

### **A Case Studies of Ahoms and the Gonds**

**(1) The Ahoms :** The Ahoms were a tribe. They ruled the present Assam from thirteenth to nineteenth century. They belonged



to a Tai-Mongolo-id group who migrated to Assam from China in the thirteenth century. The first Ahom ruler was Sufaka. He ruled from 1228 to 1268 A.D. He defeated the local rulers of his own region. Gradually the Ahoms defeated many local dynasties, such as Kacharis, Morans and the Nagasete. Then they expanded their territories in the Brahmaputra Valley. Gorgoan was the capital of Ahoms Kingdom.

Do you know why the Mughals tried to occupy the Ahom region ?

The Ahoms fought against the local powers and the rulers of the Mughals and Bengal etc. The Mughals made efforts to conquer Assam but they could not succeed. At last Aurangzeb conquered Gorgoan, the capital of Ahoms, but he could not keep it under Mughal rule. The Ahoms however ruled as Vassals of the Mughals, at the end of the eighteenth century, the Ahoms rule began to decline. About 1818 A.D., the Burmese invaded Assam. They forced the Ahom king to leave the Assam. In 1826 A.D. the British intervened in Assam. They defeat the Burmese and signed the treaty of Yandaboo with Burma in 1826. Therefore, the Assam came under the domination of the British.

**(2) The Gonds :** They are the tribes in the Central India. They live in the states of western Orissa, eastern Maharashtra, Chhattisgarh, Madhya Pradesh etc. This area came to be known as **Gondwana** because of the concentration of the Gonds in this area in large number.

Gondwana was a prosperous Kingdom from the fifteenth to eighteenth century. There were various states emerged. One of the famous Gond ruler was **Rani Durgawati**. Her Kingdom was one of the five independent Gond states. Jabalpur was her capital. The Mughals offered her becoming a vassal of their. But Rani Durgawati refused to bow before Akbar. Therefore, a fierce battle took place between Rani Durgawati and the Mughals. Rani Durgawati died by the Mughals in this battle. Basic needs of Gonds are limited. Their dwellings are very simple structure.

Do you know why did the Mughals want to occupy the Godwana ?

According to an estimate, still Gonds literacy level is very low than other people of that state. With passage of time, the Gonds have begun mixing with non-tribes.

### Points to Remember

1. Tribes lived in about all parts of Indian Subcontinent. Khokhar, Gakhar, Langah and Arghun, Bloach etc. tribes were inhabited in the various parts of Punjab.
2. Tribal society was not divided in the classes.
3. Each tribe has its own community.
4. Agriculture, hunting, gathering, cattle breeding etc. were the main occupations of tribes.
5. Ahom tribe established Ahom kingdom in present Assam and ruled about 600 years.
6. Queen Durgawati was a famous Gond ruler.



### I. Answer the following questions

1. Which was the main occupation of the tribal people ?
2. What do you mean by the Nomad ?
3. Where did the people of tribal society live ?
4. Which tribes were lived in Punjab during the medieval period ?

### II. Fill in the blanks

1. \_\_\_\_\_ and \_\_\_\_\_ were two tribes.
2. Ahom tribe established kingdom in the territories of present \_\_\_\_\_.
3. \_\_\_\_\_ was a prosperous kingdom from 15th to 18th century.
4. The people of Ahom tribe belonged to \_\_\_\_\_ class of China.
5. Queen Durgawati was famous \_\_\_\_\_ ruler.



1. Locate the extent of Ahom Kingdom on the outline map of India.
2. Locate the extent of Gond Kingdom on the outline map of India.



We shall study the developments of the belief-conventions, rituals, pilgrimages and sects during the medieval period (A.D. 800-1800).

**(A) Development of Religious systems and sects in the North India**

**(A.D. 800-1200) :** During this period the people, especially the Rajputs were believed in Hinduism. They worshipped many Hindu gods and goddesses. This religion made great progress during the reign of rulers. Both the Shaivism and Vaishnavanism were quite popular in the North India. People belonging to Shaivism worshipped Vishnu, Lord Shiva and Durga etc. The followers of Vaishnavanism worshipped Vishnu and His ten incarnations.

The followers of Shakti sect worshipped goddesses like Parvati, Durga, Lakshmi, Sarasvati, Chandika and Ambika. Both Buddhism and Jainism had lost their popularity in India during this time.

**(B) Development of Religious systems and cults in the South India**

**(800-1200 A.D.) :** Mostly the people believed in Hinduism during this period. They worshipped the Hindu gods and goddesses. Many rulers were the patrons of Buddhism and Jainism. Christianity and Islam were also popular among the people during this period.

At this time a number of religious movements were started in India. The Alwar and Nayanars popularized sang hymns in praise of Siva while the Alwars sang devotional songs of Vaishnavanism. The Lingayat sect was the most famous among the religious sects. The followers of this sect worshipped the Shivalings. During the medieval period, some great saints also lived in India. The best known among them was Shankracharya. He preached that the path of knowledge is the best way to seek salvation. It

is called "**Gyan Marg**". He also preached that the gospel of 'Advait' which means that God and soul are one.

Ramanuja was the greatest saint of Bhakti movement in South India in the medieval period. He was a Tamil Brahmana. He preached his followers the Bhakti Marg. He emphasised that love and devotion were necessary for the worship of the God.

Madhava was a one of the saints who preached Krishna Bhakti in South India. He preached Vaishnavism in the 13th century. He believed that **Gyan**, **Karma** and **Bhakti** were the three sources for attaining salvation. He advised the people to lead a pure life.

**(C) Development of Religious systems and Cults under the Delhi Sultanate (A.D. 1206 to 1526) :** During the Delhi Sultanate period there were two main religions-Islam and Hinduism.

**(1) Islam :** Prophet Muhammad, the founder of Islam was born in Mecca in 570 A.D. Muhammad's successors were called caliphs. This religion had been established in Sindh in India (Now in Pakistan) in the eighth century. By tenth century, it was also brought to Punjab.

**The Main Principles of Islam are the following :-**

- 1) To believe in one Allah.
- 2) To offer Namaz five times a day.
- 3) To observe fast during the month of Ramzan.
- 4) To pay Zakat (donation) out of his hard earned money.
- 5) Every Muslim will have to visit Mecca atleast once in his life time.

Islam was divided into two sects. The Ulemas and Sufis.

- 1. Ulemas:** The Ulemas were the religious leaders of the Muslims. They were those people who had widely read the Quran, Hadis and other religious books. They inspired the Muslims to lead a religious and pure life.
- 2. Sufis:** Sufis believed in one Allah and did not worship any other god except Allah. They also respected other religions. They did not believe in caste system.

**Hinduism :** During the period of Delhi Sultanate there were many sects in Hinduism such as Saivism, Yogis, Vaishnavism etc.

(i) **Saivism :** Saivism was founded by Shankaracharya during the 9th century A.D. His followers were called Saivas.

(ii) **Vaishnavism:** In the medieval India a new cult of worship of Vaishnu cropped up. The followers of this cult worshipped Vishnu Avatars like Rama and Krishna. Ramananda was the most famous in preaching the worship of Rama. Chaitanya Mahaprabhu of Bengal was very famous in preaching the worship of Krishna.

(D) **Development of Religious Systems and Cults during the Mughal period 1526-1707 A.D.) :** The Muslims were the followers of Islam. They applied religious laws in the functioning of the government. Akbar adopted a liberal religious policy. He removed all restrictions imposed upon the construction of Hindu places of worship by the Muslims. It is said that Akbar visited Amritsar and he made an offering to Sri Guru Ram Das Ji, the fourth Guru of the Sikhs. Akbar believed that every religion is good. He was influenced by the liberal ideas of the Sufi saints. He built at Fatehpur Sikri in 1575 the **Ibadatkhana**. There an assembly was held every thursday evening and discussions were held on religious matters. He believed that truth can be achieved anywhere. He threw open Ibadatkhana to the people of different faiths, such as Zoroastrianism, Jainism, Hinduism, Christianity. In 1579 A.D. Akbar also issued a royal decree declaring himself as the supreme arbiter in religious matters.

During the religious discussions at **Ibadatkhana** Akbar developed a belief that there was truth in every religion. So he collected the basic principles of all the religions to found a new religion as known **Din-i-Ilahi**.

After the death of Akbar his successors, Jahangir and Shah Jahan also adopted the same religious policy. But Aurangzeb changed it as a result it badly effected the Mughal empire.

### The Sufi Movement

The Sufis were the other sect of Islam. They were also known as Sheikhs or Pirs. There were many Silsilas of Sufism in North India. Among



them Chishti and Suhrawardi were most important. The Chishti Silsila was founded by Khawja Muinuddin Chishti in Ajmer and the Suhrawardi Silsila was founded by Makhdoom Bahauddin Zukkariya. The Chishti and Suhrawardi Silsilas were most important. The Chishti and Suhrawardi Silsilas differed widely in their beliefs and practices.

**The Main Principles of this Religion were given below :-**

- i) They believe in one Allah.
- ii) They did not worship any other god except Allah.
- iii) According to them Allah is omnipotent and omnipresent.
- iv) In order to reach Allah, it is essential to have a Pir or Guru.
- v) An Allah lives in every body, so every one should serve of everybody.
- vi) They believed in music.
- vii) They had respect for other religions.
- viii) They did not believe in caste system.

**Sufi Saints:**

Hazrat Khawja Muinuddin Chishti was one of the greatest Sufi Saints. He was born in Central Asia. He came to India and lived at Ajmer. He died in A.D. 1236. His Dargah at Ajmer is today a pilgrimage centre visited by thousands of people from India and abroad every year.

Sheikh Qutb-ud-din Bakhtiyar Kaki, Sheikh Farid or Baba Farid, Hazrat Nizam-ud-din Auliya and his disciple Nasir-ud-din Chiragi etc. were the famous Chisti Saints.

**Bhakti Movement**

An important religious movement was started in the medieval India. The main aim of this movement was to remove evils prevailing in Hinduism and to protect it from the danger posed by Islam. The preachers of this movement emphasised on the importance of devotion (Bhakti) for attaining salvation. For this reason this movement was known as Bhakti movement.

**The Main Principles of the Bhakti Movement**

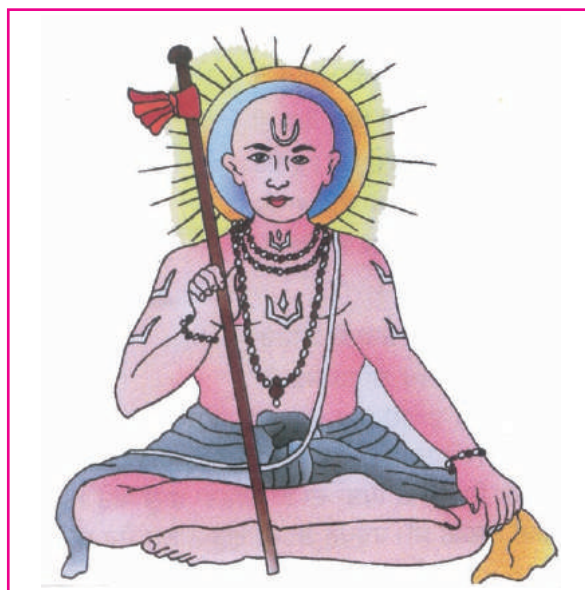
- 1. Faith in one God.
- 2. Faith in Guru.

3. Self Surrender.
4. Stress on pure life.
5. Disbelief in the caste system.
6. Disbelief in empty rituals.

### Bhakti Movement's Saints

In medieval period many Bhakti saints were born in different parts of India. Among these Ramanuja, Ramanada, Kabir, Sri Guru Nanak Dev Ji and Chaitanya Mahaprabhu are very prominent.

1. **Ramanuja** : Ramanuja was a great preacher of vaishnavism in South India. Ramanuja Ji was a Tamil Brahmana. He believed in Vaishnavism and taught his followers the worship of Vishnu. He condemned the caste system and other useless rituals and superstitions prevalent in the society of that time. He made many followers in South India.
2. **Ramanada** : Ramanada Ji was born at Paryag (Allahabad) in a Brahmana family. He was a prominent preacher of Rama Bhakti in 14th century. He was a follower of Raghwananda. He preached the worship of Rama and Sita. Ramanada opposed superstitions prevalent in society of that time. He also condemned the caste system. He was the first Bhakti reformer to throw open the gates of the divine worship to women folk. He preached in the North India, who allowed the women for divine worship.



**Design 18.1** Ramanada Ji

- 3. Saint Kabir :** Saint Kabir Ji was the most famous preacher of Bhakti movement. He was so much impressed by the teachings of the great saint Ramanada that he became his follower. He believed in the unity of God. He laid great stress on the brotherhood of mankind. He condemned idol worship, caste system, child marriage and sati system prevalent in society of that time. A very large number of his hymns are incorporated in the Adi Granth Sahib.



**Design 18.2** Saint Kabir Ji

- 4. Namdeva Ji :** Namdeva Ji was the most popular saint of Maharashtra. He preached God is formless, omnipotent and omnipresent. He emphasized people to lead a pure life. He was against the caste-system. He travelled India to propagate the views. He stayed in Punjab, Gurdaspur was the main centre of his preaching. He composed his songs in Hindi and Punjabi. His hymns are included in Sri Guru Granth Sahib.
- 5. Ravidas Ji:** Saint Ravidas Ji was born in Banaras. He used to worship one God. He believed that God is omnipresent and He lives in everyone's heart. He laid great stress on the remembrance of God and piety of mind. Many people were impressed by his thoughts and thus became his followers.



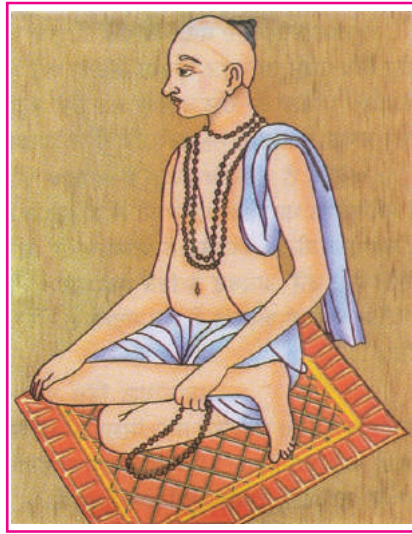
**Design 18.3** Chaitanya Mahaprabhu Ji

7. **Chaitanya Mahaprabhu Ji :** Chaitanya Mahaprabhu Ji was a most famous Bhakti saint. He was born at Nadia (Bengal) in 1486. He was the father of Vaishnavism. He believed in one God, whom he called Krishna. According to him God is both Nirguna and Saguna. He preached universal brotherhood and love. He held that presence of God could be relised through love, devotion, song and music. He made Kirtan system popular. He made Vaishnavism popular in Bengal, Assam and Orissa.
8. **Mirabai :** Mira Bai was a devotee of Lord Krishna. She sung devotional songs in the praise of Lord Krishna which are famous even today. She composed many poems in praise of Lord Krishna. She popularized Krishna bhakti through her bhajans.



**Design 18.3** Mira Bai

**Other Vaishnav Bhakti Saints :** Jaidev, Tulsidas and Surdas, Narsi Mehta and Shankardeva were other Bhakti saints.



**Design 18.4** Saint Tulsi Das Ji

## Sikhism

Sri Guru Nanak Dev Ji was the founder of Sikhism. The Sikhs are the followers of ten Sikh Gurus—Sri Guru Nanak Dev Ji, Sri Guru Angad Dev Ji, Sri Guru Amar Das Ji, Sri Guru Ram Das Ji, Sri Guru Arjan Dev Ji, Sri Guru Hargobind Ji, Sri Guru Har Rai Ji, Sri Guru Har Krishan Ji, Sri Guru Tegh Bahadur Ji, Sri Guru Gobind Singh Ji.

The Holy Place of Sikh religion is Gurdwara and Holy book is known as the “Sri Guru Granth Sahib”. Sri Guru Gobind Singh Ji asked the Sikhs to wear the five emblems i.e. Kes, Kangha, Kara, Kachhera and Kirpan. Before Guru Ji breathed his last advised the Sikhs that from then onward they should regard Sri Guru Granth Sahib as their Guru.

### Case Study Sri Guru Nanak Dev Ji

Sri Guru Nanak Dev Ji occupies an important place among the Bhakti Movement reformers of India. Sri Guru Nanak Dev Ji was a great Bhakti Movement Saint. Guru Ji denounced useless rituals, idol-worship, pilgrimages, ill-treatment of women etc. His teachings are incorporated in Sri Guru Granth Sahib.

Sri Guru Nanak Dev Ji was the founder of Sikhism. He was born on 15 April, 1469 A.D at Rai Bhoi Ki Talwandi, now called Nankana



Sahib, which is situated in Pakistan. His father was **Mehta Kalu** was a village patwari. His mother was **Tripta Devi**, Guru Ji always remained deeply engrossed in the meditation of God. He had no interest in study. His father married him to **Sulakhni**, the daughter of Mool Chand of Batala (Punjab) to change his mind. He was 14 years old then. After some time Sri Guru Nanak Dev Ji was blessed with two sons, named Sri Chand and Sri Lakhmi Das.

After marriage Sri Guru Nanak Dev Ji went to Sultanpur with his sister Bibi Nanaki Ji. Sri Guru Nanak Dev Ji got a job in Modhikhana under Daulat Khan Lodhi. While at Sultanpur, there Sri Guru Nanak Dev Ji went to the rivulet Kali Bein daily in the morning to take a bath. One day Sri Guru Nanak Dev Ji went as usual for taking bath and remained untraceable for three days. During these three days Sri Guru Nanak Dev Ji gained true knowledge. After enlightenment Guru Ji uttered "Na ko Hindu, Na ko Musalman"

**The Travels:** After attaining true knowledge Sri Guru Nanak Dev Ji set out on long travels in India and abroad. These travels are known as Udasis. The main objective of these Udasis was to remove the ignorance of the people during first Udasi. Sri Guru Nanak Dev Ji travelled Sayyidpur, Tulumba, Kurukshetra, Panipat, Haridwar, Banaras, Gaya, Kamrup, Dhaka and Jagannath Puri. During second Udasi Sri Guru Nanak Dev Ji travelled Pir Buddan Shah, Rawalsar, Jawalaji, Tebit, Sumar mountain, Mattan, Hasan Abdal etc. Sri Guru Nanak Dev Ji visited Mecca, Medina and Baghdad etc. during third Udasi. Thereafter Guru Ji settled down at Kartarpur.



**Design 18.5** Sri Guru Nanak Dev Ji

### **Main Teachings of Sri Guru Nanak Dev Ji :**

- (1) God is one.
- (2) God is Nirguna and Saguna.
- (3) God is omnipotent and omnipresent.
- (4) God is Formless.
- (5) Recitation of Nam.
- (6) God is Merciful.
- (7) Self-surrender.
- (8) Importance of Guru.
- (9) Belief in Brotherhood.
- (10) Emphasis on Morality.
- (11) Sach khand.
- (12) Condemnation of caste system.
- (13) Condemnation of useless rituals.

### **Settled at Kartarpur**

Guru Ji spent the last 18 years of his life at Kartarpur. He nominated Bhai Lehna as his successor before left the mortal world in 1539 A.D.

### **Banis of Sri Guru Nanak Dev Ji**

Sri Guru Nanak Dev Ji composed important Banis of Japji Sahib, Var Majh, Asa Di Var, Sidh Gosht, Var Malhar, Bara Maha and Patti etc.

### **2. Sri Guru Angad Dev Ji (1539-1552 A.D.)**

Sri Guru Angad Dev Ji became the second Guru of the Sikhs in 1539 A.D. He rendered a great service to the Sikh panth by developing Gurmukhi script, collecting Sri Guru Nanak Dev Ji's hymns, expanding Sangat and Pangat system, separating the udasi sect from Sikhism, founding Goindwal Sahib etc.

### **3. Sri Guru Amar Das Ji,(1552-1574 A.D.)**

Sri Guru Amar Das Ji was the third Guru of the Sikhs. Guru Ji gave the Sikhs a new place of Pilgrimage known as Goindwal. He expanded

the Langar system. He condemned the useless rituals prevalent in the Hindu society and opposed the Udasi sect.

#### **4. Sri Guru Ram Das Ji (1574-1581 A.D.)**

Sri Guru Ram Das Ji was the fourth Guru of the Sikhs. He maintained the tradition of composing hymns for the development of the Sikhism. Sri Guru Ram Das Ji composed 679 Shabads. He introduced a new system of marriage among the Sikhs circumambulation (Lawan) around Sri Guru Granth Sahib four times. Guru Sahib composed four Lawan in this respect. He further consolidated the institutions of Pangat, Sangat and Manji system. Guru Ji also condemned such social evils like caste system, sati system, child marriage etc.

#### **5. Sri Guru Arjan Dev Ji (1581-1606 A.D.)**

Sri Guru Arjan Dev Ji became the fifth Guru of the Sikhs. Guru Ji laid the foundation of Sri Harmandir Sahib at Amritsar for the development of the Sikhism. Guru Ji established the new towns of Tarn Taran, Hargobindpur, Kartarpur and a Baoli in Lahore. Sri Guru Arjan Dev Ji compiled Adi Granth Sahib for the development of the Sikhism. Mughal emperor Jahangir could not tolerate the growing popularity of the Sikhs. Jahangir blamed Guru Ji for helping the Prince Khusrau. Jahangir asked Sri Guru Arjan Dev Ji to pay a fine of Rs. 2 Lac. But Guru Ji refused to pay this fine. Thus Sri Guru Arjan Dev Ji Immersed in Eternal Light on 30 May, 1606 A.D. at the bank of river Ravi at Lahore.

#### **6. Sri Guru Hargobind Ji (1606-1645 A.D.)**

Sri Guru Hargobind Ji was the sixth Guru of the Sikhs. At the time of assuming Guruship Sri Guru Hargobind Ji decided to wear two swords of Miri and Piri. The sword of Miri was symbol of temporal power and the sword of Piri a symbol of religious leadership. The Sikhs now became Saint Soldiers. They wore arms for the protection of their religion. Guru Ji established Akal Takht Sahib for the development of the Sikhism. On 3<sup>rd</sup> March, 1645, Sri Guru Hargobind Sahib Immersed in Eternal Light.

#### **7. Sri Guru Har Rai Ji (1645-1661 A.D.)**

Sri Guru Har Rai Ji was the seventh Guru of the Sikhs. For the development of the Sikhism Guru Ji set up many preaching centers and

sent religious missionaries far and wide. He maintained the practice of 'Sangat and Pangat' which was started by the former Sikh Gurus. On 6<sup>th</sup> October, 1661 A.D. Sri Guru Har Rai Ji Immersed in Eternal Light.

### 8. Sri Guru Har Krishan Ji (1661-1664 A.D)

Sri Guru Har Krishan Ji became the eighth Guru of the Sikhs. At that time Sri Guru Har Krishan Ji was five years old. That is why Sri Guru Har Krishan Ji is also known as **Bal Guru** in the Sikh history. Guru Ji discharged his responsibilities as a Guru very intelligently. Even at such young age Guru Ji possessed keen intelligence, sublime thoughts and divine knowledge. On 30<sup>th</sup> March, 1664, A.D. Guru Ji Immersed in Eternal Light.

### 9. Sri Guru Tegh Bahadar Ji (1664-1675 A.D)

Sri Guru Tegh Bahadur Ji was the ninth Guru of the Sikhs. Guru Sahib visited various places in Punjab and outside Punjab with a view to spread the Sikhism and remove prevalent useless faith and superstitions among the people. At that time Mughal emperor, Aurangzeb ruled over India. He was a Sunni Muslim. He wanted involve the Hindus in Islam. Kashmiri Pandits were the worst sufferers his persecutions. For the protection of Hindu religion Sri Guru Tegh Bahadur Ji courted martyrdom on 11<sup>th</sup> November, 1675 A.D. at Delhi.

### 10. Sri Guru Gobind Singh Ji (1675-1708 A.D)

Sri Guru Gobind Singh Ji was the tenth Guru of the Sikhs. Sri Guru Gobind Singh Ji was born on 22<sup>nd</sup> December, 1666 A.D. at Patna. He was the only son of Sri Guru Tegh Bahadur Ji. At that time of his assumption of Guruship He was hardly nine years old. At that time India was ruled by Mughal emperor, Aurangzeb. He butchered a large number of Hindus who refused to embrace Islam. On top of all this he got Sri Guru Tegh Bahadur Ji martyred on 11<sup>th</sup> November, 1675 A.D. Sri Guru Gobind Singh Ji created the Khalsa Panth with a view to putting an end to the growing cruelties of the Mughals.

### Creation of Khalsa Panth

On the day of Baisakhi in 1699 A.D. Sri Guru Gobind Singh Ji held a congregation at Anandpur Sahib. Sri Guru Gobind Singh Ji selected the '**Panj Payaras**' the five beloved **Bhai Daya Ram, Bhai Dharam Das,**

**Bhai Mohkam Chand, Bhai Sahib Chand and Bhai Himat Rai.** Guru Ji gave the Nectar of Immortality to the five beloved ones and then begged to be baptized by them. In this way, Sri Guru Gobind Singh Ji laid the foundation the Khalsa Panth.

### Main Principles of the Khalsa Panth

1. For entering the **Khalsa Panth**, every one has to have Amrit, thereafter he would be called a **Khalsa**.
2. Every Khalsa man will use '**Singh**' with his name and Khalsa woman will use '**Kaur**' with her name.
3. Every Khalsa will believe in one God. He will not believe in any god or goddess and idol worship.
4. Every Khalsa will wear the five emblems i.e. Kes, Kangha, Kara, Kachhera and Kirpan.
5. Every Khalsa will wear weapons. He will always be ready to fight a religious war.
6. Every Khalsa will get up early in the morning and after taking a bath and recite the Gurbani.
7. Every Khalsa will earn his livelihood and honestly donate 1/10<sup>th</sup> of his earnings and use it for the religious purposes.
8. The Khalsa will not use tabbaco and other intoxicants.
9. The Khalsa while meeting each other will Hail, '**Waheguru Ji ka Khalsa, Waheguru Ji ki Fateh**'.
10. The Khalsa will not believe in caste system and class discrimination.
11. The Khalsa will keep high moral character.

#### Points to Remember

1. During the medieval period Hinduism, Shaivism, and Vaishnavanism were very popular in the North India.
2. During the medieval period christianity, Islam, Alwars, Nayanars, Lingayat etc. sects flourished in the South India.
3. Islam was divided into Ulemas and Sufis sects.
4. The Chishti and Suhrawardi Silsilas were most important.
5. Saint Ramanuj, Ramanand, Kabir, Sri Guru Nanak Dev Ji and Chaitanya Mahaprabhu etc. were prominent saints.





**I. Answer the following questions.**

1. Give an account of religious systems and cults during the Mughal period.
2. What do you know about the Sufi movement ? What were the basic principles of this movement ?
3. What do you know about the Hindu religion ?
4. What do you know about Bhakti movement ? What were the basic principles of this movement ?
5. What is the contribution of Sri Guru Nanak Dev Ji to Bhakti movement ?
6. Mention the names of main Bhakti Saints of India.
7. What are the five sacred emblems of Sikhism ?

**II. Fill in the blanks**

1. The teachings of \_\_\_\_\_are contained in the Adi Granth Sahib.
2. \_\_\_\_\_founded a new faith named Din-i-ilahi.
3. Saint Kabir was disciple of \_\_\_\_\_.
4. Bhakti Saints preached in the \_\_\_\_\_of the people.
5. Sri Guru Nanak Dev Ji was the \_\_\_\_\_of Sikhism.
6. Hazrat Khawaja Muin-ud-din was born in\_\_\_\_\_
7. \_\_\_\_\_founded Khalsa Panth in 1699 A.D.

**III. Write True or False for each statement**

1. Sri Guru Gobind Singh Ji founded the Khalsa Panth. ☐
2. The Chishti and Suhrawardi were not the popular Sufi Silsilahs. ☐
3. The Dargh of Nizam-ud-din Auliya is at Ajmer. ☐
4. Chaitanya Mahaprabhu and Mira Bai popularized Ram bhakti. ☐

5. Always popularised devotional songs of Shaivism.

6. Sri Guru Nanak Dev Ji started the practice of Langar.

#### IV. Match the Columns

Column A	Column B
1. Sri Guru Nanak Dev Ji born on	a. a Tamil Brahman
2. Ravi Das Ji was born at	b. Allahabad
3. Ramanada Ji was born at	c. Nadia in 1486 in Bengal
4. Ramanuja Ji was	d. Banaras
5. Chaitanya Mahaprabhu Ji was born in	e. 15 April, 1469 A.D. at Rai Bhoi Ki, Talwandi, now called Nankana Sahib.
6. Prophet Muhammad was born	f. in Mecca in 570 A.D.



1. Draw the picture of any four Bhakti and Sufi saints in your note book. Write about their main teachings.
2. Visit a Gurdwara. Write what you saw there ? How did you feel ?





The medieval period, saw the development of cultures such as languages, literature, painting and music etc. in India.

### **1) Development of Regional Languages, Literature, Paintings and Music in the Medieval Period (800-1200 A.D.)**

#### **Language**

- (i) North India :** Regional languages such as Gujarati, Bengali and Marathi made much progress in the North India during the medieval period. This progress was accelerated by the Bhakti movement saints, who preached in vernacular languages.
- (ii) South India :** In the South India Sanskrit, Tamil, Telugu and Kannada languages prospered under the Chola rulers. Many literary and religious compositions from Sanskrit language were translated into these languages. The Ramayana of Kampan translated into Tamil language from Sanskrit.
- (iii) The Sultanate Period (1206-1526 A.D.) :** Regional languages like Hindi, Gujarati, Marathi, Telugu and Tamil, Punjabi, Kannada etc. flourished during the Delhi Sultanate period due to the development of the bhakti movement. Various religious Holy books translated in different regional languages from Sanskrit.

Persian language was introduced in India by the Turks. With the passage of time, Hindi and Persian language was mixed and created a new language Urdu.

Sanskrit language continue to develop under the Vijayanagar kingdom rulers.

## The Mughal Period (1526-1707 A.D.)

Mughal period is called the golden era of the Persian language. It was the official language of the Mughal empire. As a result Persian language got a lot of encouragement in Punjab. Akbar emperor had Ramayana and Mahabharata translated into Persian language from Sanskrit language. Besides, Punjabi language made a rapid progress in Punjab during the Mughal period. Hindi language also flourished as an important language. The development of Urdu language started during the Mughal period.

### Literature

Literature progressed due to the patronage by the kings of all dynasties that ruled during the medieval period in India.

#### Development of Literature in the North India (800-1200 A.D.)

Literature progressed in the Rajput rulers' reign, because they were great patrons of literature. Chand Bardai wrote a book *Prithvi Raj Raso*. Among historical works, Kalhan wrote *Raj Tarangini*. This book is the main source of information about Kashmir. Jaidev, the court poet of Bengal composed, **Geet Gobind** in which he explained the love of Krishna and Radha. **Bilhan** wrote a famous book called **Vikramank Dev-Charit** in which he threw light on the life of Chola ruler Vikramaditya-VI. *Katha Sarita Sagar* is a prominent composition in Sanskrit language. It is a collection of stories.

#### Development of Literature in the South India (800-1200 A.D.)

Literature progressed under the Chola rulers. A lot of literature was created in the Tamil, Telugu and Kannada languages during this time. The Ramayana written by **Kaban** in Tamil language is one such example. Many books were written in Kannada language. The **Mahabharat** was translated into Telugu language from Sanskrit language.

#### Development of Literature under the Delhi Sultans (1206-1526 A.D.)

Persian language was an official language under the Delhi Sultans. Therefore, a lot of literature was written in this language during this period. Famous Persian poets like Amir Khusro and Amir Hussain Dehlvi composed many poems in Persian language. Historians such as **Lia Barani**, **Minhas-us-Siraj** and travellers like **Ibn Battuta** etc. recorded accounts of kings, main political events and life of the people in this language.

Ramanuja, Jaideva etc. were the famous Sanskrit writers of Delhi Sultanate. Sanskrit works were translated into many regional languages, Persian and Arabic language. Amir Khusro was also a famous Hindi writer.

Literature also progressed under the Vijayanager kingdom rulers. They encouraged many regional languages like Tamil, Telugu, Kannada and Sanskrit etc. Krishandeva Raya was a famous scholar of Sanskrit and Telugu. He wrote a poem as known **Amuktamalyada** in Telugu language.

### **Growth of Regional literature under the Mughals (1526-1707 A.D.)**

The Mughal emperors were great scholars. Babar wrote his autobiography Tuzuk-i-Babari in Turkish language and Akbar encouraged the growth of the literature. He had great scholars like Sheikh Mubarak, Abul Fazle and Faizi in his court. Abul Fazle wrote Ain-i-Akbari and Akbarnama. Akbar also translated Sanskrit works into Persian like **Ramayana, Mahabharata, Raj Tarangini, Panchatantra**, etc.

Jahangir emperor was also a great scholar of Turkish, Hindi and Persian language. He wrote his own biography Tuzuk-i-Jahangiri in Persian language. He continued to patronizing the scholars. He had many famous Hindi scholars like Rai Manohar, Bhishan Das and Keshav Das in his court.

Shah Jahan was a great lover of literature. **Padshah-Nama** of **Abdul Hamid Lahori** and **Shah Jahan Nama** of **Muhammad Sadiq** were the most famous compositions written during his reign. He also continued to give patronage to the Hindi literature.

Aurangzeb got composed **Fatwa-i-Alamgiri** regarding Islamic Law. Khalif Khan composed **Muntkahab-ul-lubab** most famous historical composition.

## **Painting**

### **Growth of Painting under the Rajput period (800-1200 A.D.)**

During this period of Rajput rulers the paintings were also made on the paper. Both Pal and Apbharash style of paintings were used for painting during this period. The paintings of Pal style are available in the religious books of Buddhism. Many colours like white, black, red and



blue are used in these paintings. More quantity of red and yellow colours is used in Apbharash style of painting. The paintings of this style are available in the Jain religion and old religious books.

### Development of Paintings under the Delhi Sultanate period (1206-1526 A.D.)

The art of painting the walls and ceilings prevailed during the Delhi Sultanate. A portrait of Muhammad Tughluq is a fine example of painting of this period. The paintings of Delhi Sultans were made by the court painters.

### Development of Painting in the Mughal period (1526-1707 A.D.)

The Mughal emperors were great lovers of painting. Therefore, the paintings made great progress during the Mughal reign. Babar and Humayun had great interest in the painting. Humayun brought two painters named Abdul Samad and Sayyid Ali from Iran to Delhi. Akbar emperor established a separate department for the development of painting. This department illustrated the books and also made the paintings of the emperors etc. **Deswant** and **Basawan** were the famous painters in the court of Akbar.

Jahangir emperor himself was a good painter. During his reign miniature painting began to develop. **Ustad Mansur, Abdul Hussan, Farukh Beg, Murad, Madav** etc. were famous painters of Jahangir.

### Growth of Music during the Medieval period (800-1200 A.D.)

The art of music flourished under the Rajput rulers during this period (800-1200 A.D.). Rajput rulers of the North, South India and the Cholas took great interest in music. In their courts, the musicians were greatly respected and rewarded.

The Indian classical music, based on the Raga system had reached its zenith during this period. There were two schools of music, they were The Hindustani and Karnatic school of music. Besides these, our folk music throw light on the richness of our musical heritage.

### Growth of Music under the Delhi Sultanate (1206-1526 A.D.)

Delhi Sultans were great lovers of music. Music flourished during this time. **Amir Khusro** was a famous musician and poet.

### Growth of Music during the Mughal period (1526-1707 A.D.)

The Mughal emperors except of Aurangzeb, were very fond of music, therefore, during their reign the art of music flourished. Both emperors Babar and Humayun were great lovers of music. Humayun used to listen music two days in a week.

Akbar had keen interest in music. Akbar himself was a good singer. He had sufficient knowledge of Sur and Taal of music. **Tansen** was the most famous singer of Akbar's court. He composed many ragas and ragnies. Apart from Tansen, Baiju Bavra and Surdas were also famous musicians in the court of Akbar. Jahangir and Shah Jahan were very fond of music. They employed many court musicians. Music became a mixture of Indian and Persian styles. New forms of music like Khayal, Thumiri and Gazal developed. The classical music had reached its zenith during Mughal period. Dohas of Saint Kabir and other Bhakti movement saints were more popular during this period.

#### Case study- Punjab

Punjabi culture such as language and literature, painting and music etc. made great progress during the medieval period.

#### Languages and literature

- (i) **Baba Farid Shakarganj** : Baba Farid Shakarganj was a sufi saint of Punjab. He is called the founder of Punjabi literature. He composed his hymns in the Lehndi or Multani which was the language of the common people. His 112 Salokas and 4 Shabads were incorporated in the Adi Granth Sahib by Sri Guru Arjan Dev Ji. Baba Farid gave an immortal contribution to the Punjabi literature.
- (ii) **Sri Guru Nanak Dev Ji (1469-1539)** : Sri Guru Nanak Dev Ji started a new era of Punjabi literature because the literature composed by Guru Ji was unique from all angles. Among Sri Guru Nanak Dev Ji's compositions Japji Sahib, Asa-Di-Var, Sidh Gosht and Babar-Vani are important. In fact the hymns of Sri Guru Nanak Dev Ji are a immortal contribution to the Punjabi literature.
- (iii) **Sri Guru Arjan Dev Ji (1563-1606 A.D.)** : Sri Guru Arjan Dev Ji compiled Adi Granth Sahib in 1604 A.D. Adi Granth Sahib incorporated the hymns of Sri Guru Nanak Dev Ji, Sri Guru Angad Dev Ji, Sri Guru Amar Das Ji, Sri Guru Ram Das Ji and Sri Guru

Arjan Dev Ji. Later on Sri Guru Tegh Bahadur Sahib Ji's hymns were also included in it. Besides the hymns of the Sikh Gurus, the hymns of Hindu Bhagats and Sufi saints and few Bhattas are also included in it. All the hymns are in praise of one God. Adi Granth Sahib holds a supreme position in the Punjabi literature.

- (iv) **Bhai Gurdas Ji (1551-1637 A.D.)** : Bhai Gurdas Ji was a great Poet. He composed 39 Vars. These Vars are considered the key to understand Sri Guru Granth Sahib. Infact, the contribution of Bhai Gurdas to Punjabi literature and Sikh philosophy is great.
- (v) **Sri Guru Gobind Singh Ji (1666-1708 A.D.)** : Sri Guru Gobind Singh Ji was an excellent poet and literary Personality. Guru Ji's compositions such as Jaap Sahib, Bachitar Natak, Zafarnama, Chandi-Di-Var and Akal Ustat etc. are very famous and incorporated in Dasam Granth. No doubt Chandi-Di-Var is an Immortal work of the Punjabi literature.
- (vi) **Shah Hussain (1538-1593)** : Shah Hussain was a famous Punjabi Sufi poet. He rendered an invaluable contribution to the Punjabi literature by composing 165 Kafis.
- (vii) **Bulleh Shah (1680-1758 A.D.)** : Bulleh Shah was a famous poet of Punjabi literature. He wrote many Kafis, Siharfis, Dohres, Athvara, Baramah etc. But the Kafis written by him are very famous. Indeed his contribution to Punjabi literature is great.
- (viii) **Damodar** : Damodar was contemporary of the Mughal emperor Akbar. He wrote the legend of Heer Ranjha in Lehndi or Multani language. He portrayed village culture of the Punjab of his time.
- (ix) **Varis Shah (1707-1798 A.D.)** : Varis Shah has an important place in Punjabi legend. Varis Shah wrote a Punjabi legend of Heer which is an important contribution to Punjabi literature.
- (x) **Shah Muhammad (1782-1862 A.D.)** : Shah Muhammad was a famous poet. He wrote the **Jangnama**. He in his work has greatly admired the grandeur of Maharaja Ranjit Singh's empire to which he was an eye witness.

### Paintings

We find many paintings in the old religious books related to the great Sikh Gurus painted on the walls of Gurdwaras and palaces. For example

we find the paintings of 22 persons who were employed by Sri Guru Amar Dass Ji for different Manjis with their names in the Goindwal. Similarly, a good number of paintings are available which are related to the Sikh Gurus and the events of their life in the various museums and gurdwaras. They throw light on the development of painting during this time.

### Points to Remember

1. Regional languages such as Gujarati, Bengali, Marathi, Sanskrit, Tamil, Telugu, Kannada, Hindi, Punjabi etc. flourished during the medieval India.
2. Prithvi Raj Raso, Geet Gobind, Raj Tarangini, Vikramank Dev-Charit, Katha Sarita Sagar, Babarnama or Ain-i-Akbari, Akbarnama, Tuzuk-i-Jahangiri, Padshah-Nama, Fatwa-i-Alamgiri, Muntkahab-ul-lubab etc. literature developed in the medieval India.
3. The Indian classical music, based on the raga system had reached its zenith during the medieval period. Amir Khusro invented Tabla and Sitar. It is said that there were about 1200 musicians in the court of Muhammad-bin-Tughlaq. Tansen was a famous singer of Akbar's court. Sri Guru Arjan Dev Ji compiled Adi Granth Sahib according to ragas and ragnies. Baiju and Padvi were the famous musicians, they wrote two books named Mimasa and Sangit Raj. Baba Farid Shakarganj composed his hymns in the Lehndi or Multani language.



### I. Answer the following questions :

1. Write the names of regional languages of North India during the medieval period (800-1200 A.D.).
2. Write the names of regional languages during the Delhi sultanate period.
3. Throw some light on the literary achievements during the Mughals in India.
4. What were the achievements of the Rajputs in the field of painting.

5. Who was considered the founder of Punjabi literature?
6. How many Vars did Bhai Gurdas compose ?
7. Name four famous poets who gave an important contribution to the Punjabi literature.
8. Give a brief account of Adi Granth Sahib.

## II. Fill in the blanks

1. \_\_\_\_\_ was the writer of Geet Govinda.
2. Prithviraj Raso was written by \_\_\_\_\_.
3. Adi Granth Sahib was composed \_\_\_\_\_ in 1604 A.D.
4. Krishan Ray was a famous \_\_\_\_\_ of Sanskrit and Telegu languages.
5. \_\_\_\_\_ was a famous musician and poet.

## III. Write True or False for each statement.

1. Ramanuja, Jaideva were the famous Sanskrit writers of Delhi Sultanate. ☐
2. Abdul Fazle did not write Ain-i-Akbari. ☐
3. Tansen was the most famous singer of Akbar's court. ☐
4. Muhammad Tughluq's portrait is a fine example of painting during the medieval period. ☐
5. The art of music did not flourish under the Rajput rulers. ☐

## IV. Match the following

### Column-A

1. Jai Dev
2. Kalhan
3. Bilhan
4. Abul Fazle
5. Aurangzeb

### Column B

- A. Vikramank
- B. Ain-i-Akbari
- C. Raj Tarangini
- D. Geet Gobind
- E. Fatwa-i-Alamgiri



### Activity

Write a brief essay on the development of Punjabi literature during the medieval period.





The Mughal empire began to decline in the eighteenth century and many an independent states had established in Northern and Southern India. The Marathas, the Nizams of Hyderabad, Haider Ali of Mysore and Tipu Sultan had established an independent state in the South. The Bengal, Avadh, Rohelkhand, Mathura and Punjab new states emerged in the North India.

### The Later Mughals

After the death of Aurangzeb (1707 A.D.) the Mughal rulers who ruled after him known as the **Later Mughals**. They were so weak that they could not hold the empire together of distant provinces.

#### Bahadur Shah (1707-1712)

Bahadur Shah ruled for six years. But he could not control the rising power of the Marathas and the Sikhs. He died in 1712 A.D.

#### Jahandar Shah

After the death of Bahadur Shah his son Jahandar Shah ascended the throne. He ruled for a few months. During his reign, two brothers Husain Ali and Abdullah became very powerful. They wanted the Jahandar Shah to become a puppet in their hands. But he refused to do so. They got him murdered.

#### Farrukhsiyar (1713-1719 A.D.)

After the death of Jahandar Shah his nephew Farrukhsiyar ascended the throne of Delhi. He was a ruler only in name. The empire was controlled by the two brothers Hussain Ali and Abdullah, known as the Sayyid brothers. In 1719 A.D. as he tried to free himself from the Sayyid brothers, he too was put to death. The next famous ruler was Muhammad Shah



**Design :** *Establishment of New States in the Eighteenth Century*

who ruled from 1719 to 1748 A.D. Soon after coming in power Muhammad Shah over throw the Sayyid brothers. But powerful governors established independent states in different parts of the country. At the same time, The Sikhs, Marathas, Jats and Rajputs revolted against the Mughals. The last Mughal emperor was Bahadur Shah Zafar. He was removed from the throne by the British and brought an end to the Mughal empire.



**Design 20.1** Bahadur Shah Zafar

### **New Political Formations**

After Muhammad Shah the regional kingdoms became very powerful during medieval period.

#### **Bengal**

Bengal was the first state to be freed from the Mughals in the 18th century. Murshid Quli Khan was the Subedar of Bengal and Orissa in 1717 A.D. under the Mughals. In fact, he was ruling independently. He made **Murshidabad** his capital instead of Dhaka. He was an able and wise ruler. He died in 1727 A.D. He was succeeded by Shuja-ud-din. Shuja-ud-din became the new ruler of Bengal and Orissa in 1733 A.D. The reign of Shuja-ud-din was peaceful. He died in 1739 A.D.

Shuja-ud-din was succeeded by his son Surfraz Khan. He proved to be an incompetent ruler. He was killed by the Alivardi Khan in the battle of Gheria in 1740 A.D.

In 1740 A.D. Alivardi Khan became the new ruler of Bengal, Bihar

and Orissa. After the death of Alivardi Khan, Siraj-ud-Daulah became the ruler of Bengal in 1756 A.D.

The rulers of Bengal improved the administration and encouraged agriculture, industry and trade. They also maintained complete peace and prosperity in the state.

## Avadh

**Saadat Khan** became the governor of Avadh in 1722 A.D. by the Mughal emperor, Muhammad Shah. He brought able reforms in the economy of the kingdom and paid special attention to agriculture. He died in 1739 A.D.

After the death of Saadat Khan, Safdar Jang became the ruler of Avadh. He ruled till 1754 A.D. He was also the Wazir of the Mughal emperor Ahammad Shah. He died in 1754 A.D.

**Shuja-ud-Daulah** became the ruler of Lucknow in 1754 A.D. In 1774 A.D. Shuja-ud-Daulah conquered the regions of Rohelkhand. He died in 1775 AD.

After the death of Shuja-ud-Daulah, Asaf-ud-Daulah became the ruler of Avadh. After some time, the British Governor General Warren Hastings compelled him to sign a treaty of Faizabad and increase the sum to be paid for the British army that was posted in the Avadh.

## Hyderabad

The state of Hyderabad was founded by the **Nizam-ul-Mulk** whose original name was **Chin-Qilich-khan**. He was the wazir of the Mughal ruler, Muhammad Shah. He declared Hyderabad his capital. The Mughal emperor accepted Nizam-ud-Mulk the governor of South and conferred on him the title of **Asifjah**. Though he did not formally declare his independence but he ruled over Hyderabad as an independent ruler. His successors belonged to the **Asifjah** Dynasty and were known as Nizams.

## Mysore

Hyder Ali in 1761 A.D. became the ruler of Mysore. During his reign he set up a sound administrative system in Mysore. He adopted the policy of tolerance towards other religions. He appointed many Hindus on higher ranks. He fought many battles with the Marathas, the Nizam of Hyderabad,



**Design 20.2** Hydar Ali

the rulers of Karnataka and the British. Two wars were fought between the Hydar Ali and the British. In the first Anglo-Mysore war Hydar Ali defeated the British. In 1780 A.D. the second Anglo-Mysore war broke out between them. This war was still going on when Hydar Ali died in 1782 A.D.



**Design 20.3** Tipu Sultan

Hyder Ali was succeeded by his son, Tipu Sultan. He was an able ruler like his father. He was known as the **Tiger of Mysore**. He proved to be great patriot. He brought many reforms in the administration. He determined to put an end to the cruel rule of the British in India. Thus, he introduced modern weapons in his army and tried to build a modern army. He also encouraged the trade and industry. He died in 1799 in the fourth battle of Mysore against the British.



### Relations with the Mughals

Aurangzeb could not tolerate the growing power of Shivaji. In order to curb the power of Shivaji, Aurangzeb sent an army against Shivaji at Pune under the leadership of Shaista Khan the Governor of South India. Shaista Khan occupied many of Shivaji's territories, forts and Pune. After some time on the night in 1663 A.D. Shivaji along with 400 soldiers, entered Pune in the form of a marriage party. He invaded Shaista Khan at midnight. In this invasion Abdul Fateh, son of Shaista Khan and many Mughal soldiers were killed but Shaista Khan fled to save his life.

In 1667 A.D. when Shivaji and his son reached at Agra to meet Aurangzeb, he imprisoned them. But Shivaji and his son, sitting in the baskets of sweets escaped from the prison.

Shivaji declared himself an independent ruler and assumed the title as **Chhatarpati** in 1674 A.D. He died in 1680 A.D.

### Successors of Shivaji

After the death of Shivaji, his son Sambhaji became ruler in 1689 A.D. He proved to be incompetent. Sambhaji was imprisoned and put to death on Aurangzeb's order in 1689 A.D.

After Sambhaji, his brother Raja Ram became the ruler. He continued his struggle against the Mughals. Raja Ram died in 1707 A.D. After his death Tara Bai, Raja Ram's widow queen became guardian of her four year son Shivaji-II and she began to rule. She was a courageous woman.

After Aurangzeb's death in 1707 A.D. Shahuji was successful in becoming the ruler in 1708. He appointed Balaji Vishvanath as his Peshwa. Gradually all the powers held to Balaji Vishvanath. He died in 1720 A.D.

Which political powers continued struggle against the Mughals during the reign of Aurangzeb ?

After the death of Balaji Vishvanath his son Baji Rao became the new Peshwa in 1720 A.D. In 1739 A.D. he occupied Salsette, Bassein and Thane settlements of the Portuguese.

In 1740 A.D. Balaji Baji Rao became the third Peshwa after the death of Baji Rao-I. Ahmed Shah Abdali defeated the Marathas in the third battle of Panipat in 1761 A.D. The Peshwa could not bear this defeat and died. Madhav Rao became the fourth Peshwa in 1761 A.D.

## The Marathas

During the reign of Aurangzeb Shivaji had established an independent state in Maharashtra. Balaji Vishvanath became the first Peshwa of the Marathas. The Marathas had expanded their rule under the leadership of the Peshwas.

### Shivaji

Shivaji was the founder of the Maratha dynasty. He was born on April 20th, 1627 A.D. at Shivner at Pune. His father Shahji Bhonsle was a Jagirdar and held a high post in the court of the Sultan of Bijapur. Shivaji's mother's name was Jija Bai. Shivaji was influenced by his mother, Dadaji Kondev and guru Ram Das . Shivaji was a patriot. He wanted to put an end of the Mughal rule and to establish an independent Hindu state.



**Design 20.4** Shivaji Maratha

In 1646 A.D., when Ali Adil Shah, the Sultan of Bijapur fell ill. Shivaji occupied the fort of Toran. After this in 1648 A.D. he also occupied the forts of Purandhar, Kondana, Konkan, Kalyani and Singhgarh. After the death of Dada ji Kondev he also occupied the Pune in 1648 A.D.

In 1659 A.D. the Sultan of Bijapur sent an army against Shivaji under the leadership of Afzal Khan. But he could not capture Shivaji. Therefore he invited Shivaji in the fort of Partapgarh for a treaty. When both of them were about to embrace each other Afzal Khan tried to kill Shivaji but Shivaji killed him with dagger. In the end the sultan signed a treaty with Shivaji and accepted him as an independent ruler.

After the death of Madhav Rao many other Peshwas remained on the post of Peshwa such as Narayan Rao, Madhav Rao Narayan and Baji Rao-II. In 1818 A.D. Lord Hastings, the British Governor General occupied the Maratha empire by defeating Baji Rao-II.

### The Rajputs

The Rajputs and the Mughals were like friends, but fell apart during the reign of Aurangzeb. After the death of Aurangzeb, when Mughal empire started to decline, they became independent. The most famous Rajput ruler was **Sawai Raja Jai Singh of Amber** (now called Jaipur). He encouraged study of Science. He built the beautiful Pink City of Jaipur. He also built many astronomical observatories at Delhi, Jaipur, Ujjain and Mathura etc.



**Design 20.5** Sawai Raja Jai Singh built astronomical observatory at Jaipur

### The Jats

The Jats of Mathura started a revolt against the Mughals under the leadership of Gokul. After him the Jats continued their struggle against the Mughals under the leadership of Raja Ram and then Churaman. Churaman was successful in obtaining the Mansabdari of 1500 Jats and 500 Sawars from the Mughal emperor. His successor Badan Singh made his army powerful. He built many forts in his state. He made Bharatpur his capital. He expanded his kingdom by occupying Agra, Meerut, Aligarh etc.

Which political powers struggled with the Mughals for long period during the reign of Aurangzeb ?

## Case study: The Sikhs

### Sri Guru Gobind Singh Ji

18th century was a period of conflict between the Sikhs and the Mughals. The Mughals let loose great atrocities on the Sikhs. In order to put an end of the cruel rule of the Mughals Sri Guru Gobind Singh Ji founded Khalsa Panth in 1699 A.D. A brave community came in existence which put an end of Mughal Empire. There were two wars fought between Sri Guru Gobind Singh Ji and the Mughals such as the first and second battle of Anandpur Sahib and the battle of Chamkaur Sahib and Khidrana. Guru Ji put a brave fight against the Mughals at Chamkaur Sahib. Here Guru Ji's two elder Sahibzadas Ajit Singh and Jujhar Singh Ji Martyred. In 1706 A.D. Sri Guru Gobind Singh Ji badly defeated the Mughals in the battle of Khidrana or Mukatsar.



**Design 20.6** Sri Guru Gobind Singh Ji

### Banda Singh Bahadur

Banda Singh Bahadur was born on 27 Oct. 1670 A.D. at village Rajori in district Poonch of Jammu. His original name was Lachhman Das. Banda Singh Bahadur met Sri Guru Gobind Singh Ji at Nanded Sahib in 1708 A.D. Guru Ji ordered him to avenge the cruelties of the Mughals with the help of the Sikhs. Reaching in Punjab a large number of the Sikhs joined him. Banda Singh Bahadur began his conquests from Kaithal in 1709 A.D. After this he conquered Samana, Kapuri and Sadhaura. Banda Singh Bahdur avenged the executions of Zorawar Singh and Fateh Singh the sons of Sri Guru Gobind Singh Ji by defeating and killing Nawab Wazir Khan at Chaparchiri. After some time Banda Singh Bahadur conquered Saharanpur, Behat, Jalalabad, Karnal, Panipat, Amritsar, Gurdaspur, Kalanaur and Pathankot. He made Lohgarh his capital.





**Design 20.7** Banda Singh Bahadur

Banda Singh Bahadur established a Sikh state in Punjab. Banda Singh Bahadur and his companions were made prisoners in 1715 A.D. They were sent to Delhi. Before executing Banda Singh Bahadur, his 3 years son Ajay Singh was killed before his eyes. Banda Singh Bahadur was executed on 9th June, 1716 A.D.

**Abdus Samad Khan :** In 1716 A.D. during the reign of Farrukhsiyar Abdus Samad Khan was the Subedar of Punjab. He killed innumerable Sikhs. Therefore, Farrukhsiyar conferred on him the title of the **Sword of the State**.

#### **Zakariya Khan**

Zakariya Khan was the son of Abdus Samad Khan. He became the Subedar of Punjab in 1726 A.D.. He adopted harsh policy to suppress the Sikhs. A large number of the Sikhs were killed by him. He executed persons like Bhai Mani Singh, Mehtab Singh, Bhai Taru Singh and Haqiqat Rai.

#### **Yahiya Khan**

Yahiya Khan was the son of Zakariya Khan. He became the new Subedar of Punjab in 1745 A.D. He continued the policy of persecution of the Sikhs.



Yahiya Khan invaded the Sikhs suddenly at Kahanuwan (Gurdaspur). There 7000 Sikhs were killed and 3000 were imprisoned. This event is known as the **First Holocaust**.

### Mir Mannu

In 1748 A.D. Mir Mannu became the new Subedar of Punjab. He persecuted the Sikhs in large number. But Mir Mannu could not pay proper attention towards the Sikhs. That is why, the Sikhs consolidated their power still more.

### Ahmad Shah Abdali

Ahmad Shah Abdali was the ruler of Afghanistan. He invaded Punjab eight times. These invasions provided the Sikhs an opportunity to organise themselves. In 1765 A.D. the Sikhs took possession of Lahore and declared their independence. But now they had not single leader. So they organized themselves into small groups. These groups came to known as 'Misls' which were twelve in number. Each Misl had its own leader who controlled a specific area of the misl. Towards the end of the eighteenth century, Maharaja Ranjit Singh, the leader of the Sukerchakia misl united all the misls and established an independent kingdom in Punjab.



**Design 20.8** Maharaja Ranjit Singh

### Points to Remember

1. The Bengal, Avadh, Hyderabad, Masore, Maratha etc. new states established in India during the eighteenth century.
2. Bengal was the first state to be independent from the Mughals in the eighteenth century.
3. Nizam-ul-Mulk got the title of Asifjah.
4. In 1761 A.D. Hyder Ali became the ruler of Mysore.
5. Tipu Sultan is known as the 'Tiger of Mysore'.
6. Shivaji assumed the title as 'Chhatrapati'.
7. Rajput ruler Sawai Raja Jai Singh of Amber built the beautiful pink city of Jaipur.
8. Sri Guru Gobind Singh Ji created Khalsa Panth in 1699 A.D.
9. Banda Singh Bahadur's original name was Lachhman Das.



#### I. Answer the following questions.

1. Name any four regional powers which rose in the 18th century.
2. List the later Mughals given in the chapter.
3. Give an account of the rise of Avadh in 18th century.
4. How did the Sikhs rise to power in the 18th century?
5. How did Hyder Ali and Tipu Sultan make Mysore powerful ?
6. Discuss the role of Shivaji in establishing the Maratha Empire.

#### II. Fill in the blanks :

1. Muhammad Shah ruled from\_\_\_\_\_.
2. Murshid Qali Khan was the \_\_\_\_\_ of Bengal and Orissa.
3. Hyder Ali was the ruler of \_\_\_\_\_.
4. Saadat Khan became the Subedar of Avadh \_\_\_\_\_ A.D.
5. Shivaji was the founder of \_\_\_\_\_empire.

6. Gokul was the leader of \_\_\_\_\_
7. Banda Singh Bahadur's original name was \_\_\_\_\_.

### III. Write True or False for each statement.

1. Farrukhsiyar became the ruler of Delhi. ☐
2. Murshid Quli Khan was the Subedar of Avadh. ☐
3. Nizam-ul-Mulik founded the state of Hyderabad. ☐
4. Shivaji was succeeded by his brother Raja Ram. ☐
5. Balaji Rao became the third Peshwa in 1740 A.D. ☐
6. Badhan Singh was the successor of Gokul. ☐
7. Banda Singh Bahadur established a Sikh State in Punjab. ☐

### IV. Match the Columns

Column-A	Column B
1. Bahadur Shah	a. died in 1739 A.D.
2. Shuja-ud-din	b. April 20th 1627 A.D.
3. Hyder Ali	c. died in 1712 A.D.
4. Tipu Sultan was known	d. as the Tiger of Mysore.
5. Shivaji was born	e. died in 1782 A.D.
6. Shri Guru Gobind Singh Ji	f. on 27 October, 1670 A.D. founded Khalsa Panth
7. Banda Singh Bahadur was born	g. in 1699 A.D.

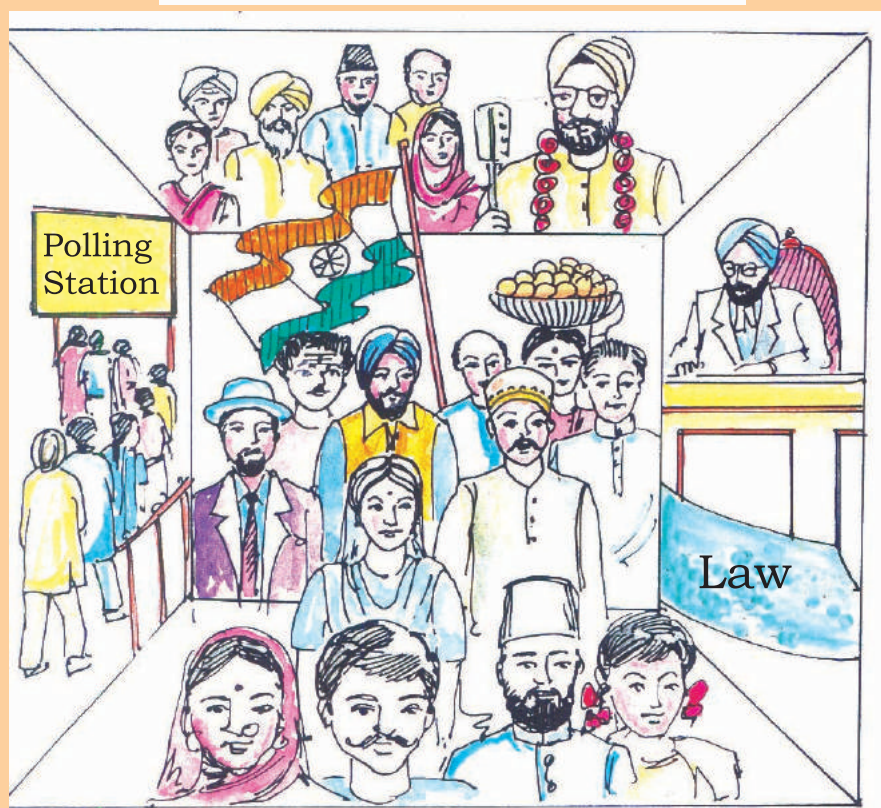
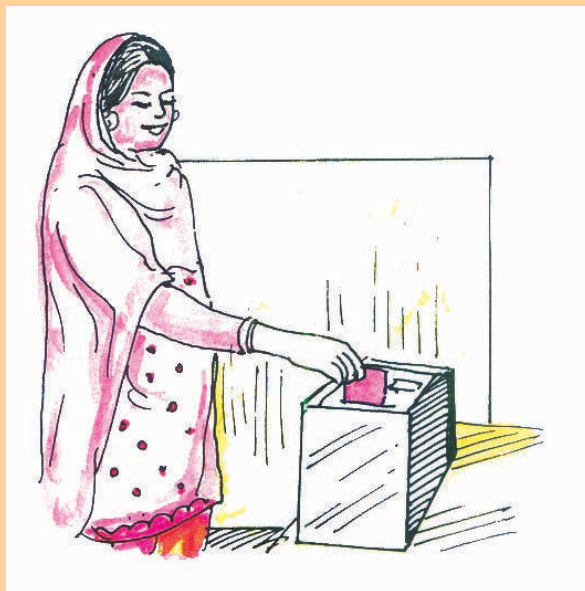


On the outline map of India, mark the extent of Kingdoms that declared themselves independent during the Mughal empire in the 18th century.



## Unit - III      Civics

# Democracy and Equality



## **Democracy and Equality**

This unit will focus on the actual functioning of democratic institutions and ideals. An effort has been made to enable the child to grasp and comprehend the inter-dependence among the Political, Social and Economic aspects of life. The objective is to represent democracy as system, which is ever changing.

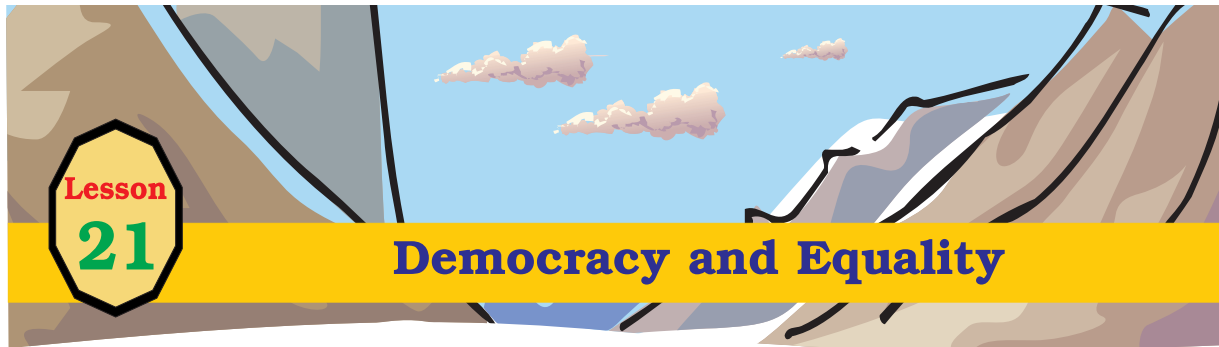
An attempt has been made to help the learner to understand the relationship between the state and citizens, by introducing him/her to different democratic institutions and organizations such as government, bureaucracy elections and the Media. The topic of gender equality and it's role in the social and economic development of the country and the importance of woman's rule has also been discussed.

The role of markets around us has also been discussed with special emphasis on retail and wholesale markets, their accessibility, working and their importance in the economic growth of the society.

The above concepts discussed under this unit will enable the learners to develop such skills which will enable them to understand and critically examine the equality and interdependence of political, social and economic aspects. By understanding the importance representative government, gender equality, rule of law and advertising, they will become responsible citizens of the country.

**Co-ordinator**





India is a democratic Republic. Democracy is a form of government which is elected by the people. In a democratic country, the supreme power of government lies with the people. People have the right to participate in the state governance directly or indirectly. But they may or may not participate. People's representatives participate directly, whereas people participate indirectly, by electing their representatives. In a democratic country Administrative policies are determined by the representatives according to the will of the people. It is because of this, that public opinion is very important institution of Democracy.

In a democratic country, people elect their representatives through elections, to form government. In case the government doesn't work well, people has the right to change it during next election. Thus elections are also important instrument of democracy.

In a democratic country there are two types of heads- nominal and real. In our country President is nominal head of the state, at the centre, whereas governor is the nominal head of the state government. Prime Minister and Chief Minister are the heads of the government at the centre and state level, respectively.

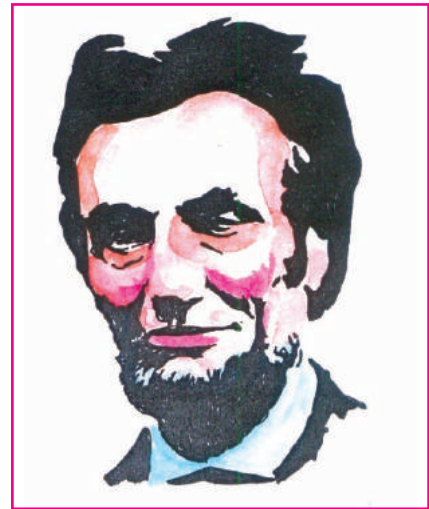
A democratic country where head of the country is elected, is known as Republic. Our President, is an elected executive head. Thus our country is known as Democratic-Republic. In some of the Democratic countries, head is not elected but acquire the headship through Heridity. The head of such a country is either king or queen, as we find in England.

There is another form of the government which is known as dictatorship. Where the ruling power rests with a single dictator or group of dictators. In such a country neither elections are held, nor the

government is run according to people's will. The power lies with the dictator, whose order is the law of the land and People act according to his will.

### **Democracy-Meaning :**

Democracy is a form of the government in which the representatives are elected by the people. Democracy is people's own government. it means that the administration is run according to people's will. Legally also power to run the administration lies with the people. In a democracy power, to final decision making lies with the people. It is the 'Rule of law' which prevails in Democratic country. Democratic government is being framed by the people and work for the people's welfare.



**Design 21.1** Abraham Lincoln

According to Abraham Lincoln, Democracy is a government, "of the people, by the people and for the people".

### **Origin of Democracy in Modern Societies :**

Democracy originated in Greek city of Athens and has been practiced for almost two and half thousand, years ago in that city. It is learnt that people of Athens used to get together at one place, many times in a year where they used to frame laws in the General assembly. This was possible as the number of people was less and could be accommodated together. The citizens played equal part in the decision making. However women, and foreigners were not allowed to vote for, decision making. Such a democracy is known as Direct-Democracy where decisions were taken directly by the people.

Modern Democracy has emerged in the European Countries. The new principle "Government should run by the laws made by the people's representatives" which was evolved after the glorious revolution of England in the seventeenth century and French revolution in the eighteenth century. These great revolutions gave birth to another principle which further strengthened the roots of democracy. It was the principle of accountability or responsibility, which means that government must be

responsible to the people. Initially, the number of electorate was very limited and small. With the passage of time, right of vote was given to the middle class people and the women as well.



**Design 21.2** A view of the democratic system

**As the basic principle of democracy is equality.** The provision of universal franchise which is based on the right to equality was must. In the nineteenth and twentieth century the right to equality was further strengthened. Earlier the principle of equality was limited to the political life, which ensured right to vote to all adult citizens. Ultimately this equality was further established in the social as well as economic field. Thus the Democracy is based on the principles - Rule of law, accountability, universal adult franchise and equality in the political, economic as well as in social life.

As the population of a state goes on increasing year by year. The type of direct democracy changed its form into indirect Democracy or Representative Democracy. With the advent of universal franchise the number of voters has increased to a great extent. People started electing their representatives who make and implement laws, for the people. This type of Democracy is known as indirect or Representative Democracy.

**Switzerland is the only country where there is Direct democracy.**

In a democratic society, all type of people are equal in the eye of law. Every citizen has right to develop his personality. No body is privileged on the basis of caste, creed or birth. In a democratic country all people are equal. It is the economic and social equality which ensures the political equality. It is because of this reason, we can say that democracy is not the form of government, but it is the way of life where every person is equal.

### **Different Types of Democracy**

Democracy as a form of government can be further divided into two categories

- (a) Parliamentary and presidential
- (b) Unitary and federal

In the first category the form of government is divided into parliamentary or presidential on the basis of influence or powers of executive or legislature.

In the parliamentary form of government, parliament is more powerful. President is the nominal head of the state whereas Prime Minister is the real head of the government. In such type of government, all the ministers of the council of ministers are members of the legislature. Thus in parliamentary form of Democracy, there is more co-ordination between the legislature and Executive organs of government.

In the Presidential form of government the head of the state, President is elected, directly by the people. He is nominal as well as, the real head of the government. In this form of government, the ministers in the council of minister can be from different political parties. Such type of government is in America. The American President is more powerful than the Indian president., as he is directly elected by the people unlike the Indian president.

Another Classification of the Democratic government is based on the division of powers between the central and the state government. Although both are independent in their own sphere. Democratic government on the basis of this classification is unitary and federal form of government. In the federal form of government the Constitution is written and rigid. There is Division of powers between the centre and the state government.



Every state has its own government. India is basically a federal form of Democratic government with a unitary bias.

In the unitary form of government, although powers are divided between centre and state government, but centre is more powerful than the state government. Our Indian constitution is known as federal in form but unitary in spirit. It means in ordinary times, it is union of the states that means federal. But at times of some internal or external emergency the centre becomes more powerful.

### Features of Democracy

In the modern times, Democracy is considered to be the best form of government. Some of the basic conditions required for successful Democracy are as following :

1. **Enlightened Citizens :** As the basic features of Democratic country is Public will or opinion. Thus to make democracy a successful form of government, Enlightened Citizens are the prerequisite. Only enlightened and politically matured people can run the administration efficiently.
2. **Matured Leadership :** Along with the enlightened citizens efficient leadership is also important. Mature and honest leaders are very important to run the Democratic administration efficiently.
3. **Disciplined Citizens And Political Parties :** Disciplined citizens can act as good watchdog for the government to bring it upto the mark. Because they can positively criticise and make the government work efficiently. Similarly disciplined political parties are known as the soul of the democracy. Disciplined political parties can bring forth good and honest persons to the forefront to make laws of the country.
4. **Social and Economic Equality :** Social and Economic equality is also essential for the success of political Democracy. There is no discrimination in the social as well as Economic field on the basis of caste, creed and languages. Similarly the economic sources should be equally shared by the people.
5. **Tolerance :** Party in the power should be open minded and tolerant for the healthy opposition of the government and to accommodate the minority opinion.



So these are the basic conditions required for the success of Democratic country.

### Why Democratic government is popular ?

In the modern times human rights are very significant part of the society. According to these rights everybody is free and equal to get opportunities to develop one's personality. Democracy is based on the principle of 'Rule of Law', freedom, equality and brotherhood. Thus now a-days, Democracy is the most prevalent form of government in the world and it is expanding to most of countries. The laws made by the people, for their own welfare. Factors which make Democracy a popular form of government are following :

1. **Formal equality** : In democratic government, every body is equal before the law of the land. Thus, this type of government is preferred than other dictatorial forms of government.
2. **Freedom** : In democracy people are free from any type of pressure. They are free to adopt any profession, settle down anywhere in the country according to their own will.
3. **Decision Making System** : In democracy decisions to run administration are also taken by the representatives of the people. Parliament and state legislatures make laws in accordance with the people's will or public opinion. If the government does not work according to public opinion, it can be changed in the next elections.
4. **Active Participation of the people** : In democracy people participate actively in the government working. They elect and can be elected according to their opinion. They can cast their vote according to their own will, without any interference and exposure. Thus every individual is equally important for society, unlike the other forms of government.
5. **No Discrimination** : There everybody's point of view is honoured. Ruling party always respect the views of opposition party. It pays proper attention to their suggestions and try to make the required changes in government policies.
6. **Enhances Prestige of the Citizens** : By giving equal opportunities to all, to get employment, by making reservation for minorities, it

help to enhance the prestige of all human beings in equal way. In this type of government, special attention is being paid to the downtrodden and backward communities.

### Points to Remember

1. Democracy is people's own government. According to Abraham Lincoln, Democracy is a government of the people, by the people and for the people.
2. Democracy originated in Greek City of Athens.
3. In a democratic country there are two types of heads. Nominal and real. In our country President is nominal head of the state at the centre whereas Governor is the nominal head of the state government. Prime Minister and Chief Minister and the real heads of the government at the centre and state level, respectively.
4. The provision of Universal franchise is must and it is based on the right of equality.
5. Switzerland is the only country where there is Direct democracy.



#### I. Answer the following questions in 1-15 words :

1. What do you understand by democracy ?
2. What do you know about the 'Rule of Law' ?
3. What is the importance of universal adult franchise ?
4. What do you mean by Presidential form of government ?
5. What is the importance of public opinion in democracy ?
6. In which country there is still 'Direct Democracy' ?

#### II. Answer the following questions in 50-60 words :

1. Write short note on the emergence of democracy.
2. Write about the emergence of the principle of equality ?
3. Where and when democracy emerged ?

4. Write name of four types of democracy on the basis of classification ?
5. What do you mean by 'Parliamentary Democracy' ?
6. Write about any two features of the Democracy.
7. Write your views about Economic and Social equality ?
8. Why democracy is the most popular form of government in modern times ?

**III. Fill in the Blanks :**

1. India is a \_\_\_\_\_ Republic.
2. The nominal Executive head of Central Govt. is \_\_\_\_\_ and heads of state Govt's are \_\_\_\_\_ ?
3. Democracy originated in City of \_\_\_\_\_.
4. \_\_\_\_\_ is the country where there is Direct Democracy.
5. The basic principle of Democracy is \_\_\_\_\_ and \_\_\_\_\_.

**IV. True/False :**

1. India is a democratic Republic. ☐
2. Switzerland is the only country where there is Direct Democracy. ☐
3. To cast vote is a universal Adult Franchise to only some persons. ☐
4. In a Democratic country Rule of Law prevails. ☐
5. Modern Democracy has emerged firstly in France. ☐

**V. Multiple-Choice questions :**

(Tick any right option from following questions)

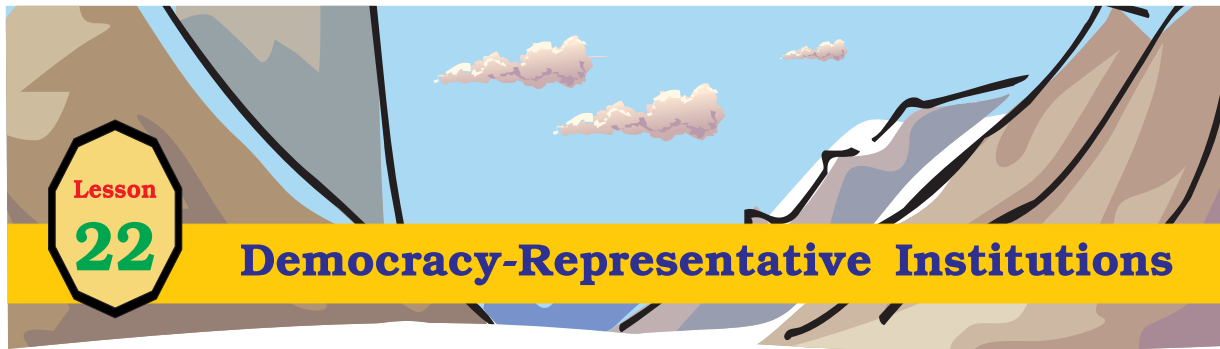
1. **Democracy is a government, "of the people, by the people and for the poeple." Who spoke these words.**
  - (1) Abraham Lincoln
  - (2) Laski
  - (3) David Easten

2. **Which is the most popular form of government in modern times.**
  - (1) Dictatorship
  - (2) Democracy
  - (3) Military Rule
3. **How many types of heads of state in democratic countries ?**
  - (1) Four
  - (2) Five
  - (3) Two



1. Prepare a list of 10 Democratic Countries.
2. Discuss about the success of Indian Democracy with your teacher.





Now-a-days there is democratic set up of government in most of the countries. You know that Democracy is a government of the people, by the people and for the people. But in these days there is no direct democracy like in the ancient times. In democratic countries, people govern themselves indirectly i.e. by electing their representatives. Such a democracy run by the people's representatives is called representative democracy. These representatives make laws in the legislature and get them implemented by the executive. In such a system of the government, elections and representation are very closely related to each other. In India, we have got the representative Democracy (Indirect Democracy).

An independent institution which conduct elections in our country is known as Election Commission. This institution tries to conduct elections in a fair and honest manner. The election Commissioner of the Indian election commission is appointed by the president of India. This commission is responsible to conduct elections at all levels-the parliament, state assemblies and local self-institutions.

The political parties of the country are also an inseparable part of the election process. They help the people to express their political views. These parties nominated the candidates and help in conduct of elections of various levels.

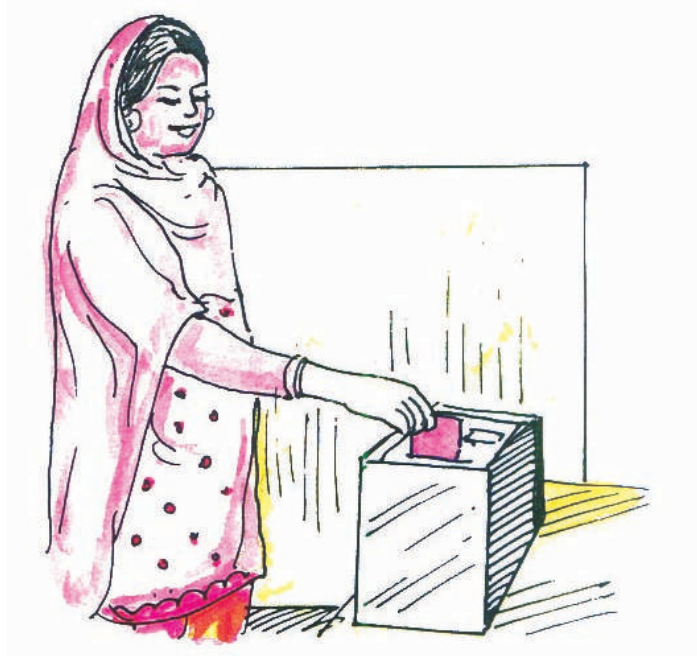
Now we will study the various institutions which are an inseparable part of the democratic set up.

### **Universal adult suffrage**

The most important institution of democratic set up in elections which depends on universal adult franchise. The right to express one's will is called, the right to vote. When every citizen of the country has right to vote, It is known as universal adult franchise. In modern



democratic countries this right to vote is given to all the citizens without any discrimination. No distinction is made on the basis of the caste, creed, sex, wealth or education, for right to vote. In India, now adulthood is attained by the age of 18 years which was earlier 21 years.



**Design 22.1** A women casting the vote

Thus all the adults of the country has equal right to vote. Only the people who are declared criminals or mentally retarded don't enjoy this right to vote.

### **One Man One Vote**

The main principle of universal adult Franchise- 'one man, one vote, is based on the principle of equality. Because everybody, rich or poor, educated or illiterate is considered equal. Thus this right to equality is also implied to the adult franchise.

The right of universal adult franchise is based on the following : 1. It is based on the political equality. 2 It is very essential for real democracy. 3. It makes the government accountable to all the citizens. So it is basically based on the principle of equality.

## **Elections**

In democracy, government is made up of the people's representatives.

People elect their representatives through election, who make the government. Elections are very important in modern democracy because

1. all people together cannot run the administration thus they elect their representatives.
2. Executive can be controlled through elected representatives.

Thus we can say, Democracy is not possible without election.

In a democratic country elections are of two types- General elections and mid-term elections. When elections are held all over the country for parliament or for the state assemblies. Such elections are termed as general elections. These general elections are held after every five year for the Lok Sabha as well as for the state assemblies. So far 16 general elections has been held in India. Sometime elections held, due to the death of some member of the state assembly or mid term dissolution of the house by the President of India, Such election is known as Mid-term election.

### **Secret-ballot System**

Secret ballot system is an important feature of Indian election process. It is an important part of democratic election system. While casting one's vote, no one want any type of interference from other person. Thus to maintain the secrecy of one's right to vote is very important, to conduct fair and honest election. Secret ballot system, means no second person should come to know that in whose favour a voter is casting his vote. At the time of election, the voter goes to the polling station, take his slip and caste his vote in the polling box according to his own choice of the candidate. Mark a sign on the ballot paper and put it in the ballot box. No body comes to know that in whose favour he has casted his vote. So this system of secret ballot is very important for the success of democracy.

### **Election procedure**

Every country has it's own system and procedure of elections. In India the procedure of election is as following :

- 1. Notification :** During the general election in our country president or governor of states, issue notification calling upon voters in their states to elect the members of state assemblies. Meanwhile the election commission announces the last date and time of filing the nomination papers.

2. **Selection of candidates :** Legally, any citizen of India who is an enlisted voter and is above 25 years of age can contest election. But a government servant cannot contest an election until he resigns from his post. In parliamentary democracy, most of the candidates are being put up by different political parties. Candidates who do not belong to any political party can also contest election. Such candidates are known as independent candidates.
3. **Filing of Nomination papers and scrutiny :-** The candidates selected by the political parties file their nomination papers, which are scrutinised by the returning officer of that area. The Nomination papers are duly signed by the candidate. The candidates whose nomination is found valid, are allowed to contest. Every candidate has to deposit some money, as a security, which is being returned, in case the candidate win election. If a candidate want to withdraw from the contest he can do so upto the last date fixed for this purpose.
4. **Allotment of election symbols :-** The national and regional parties have permanent election symbols. These symbols are printed on the ballot paper along with the name of the candidates. Independent candidates are also allotted the election symbols. These symbols are particularly useful for the illiterate voters, who cannot read, name of the candidates. Thus they can cast their vote according to symbols.
5. **Election duty officers :-** One of the senior civil servant posted in the district is being asked by the election commissioner to work as returning officer. He is responsible for conducting election in a particular constituency.
6. **Election manifesto :-** Election manifesto is a document issued by every political party during the general election. In which declaration of policies and programmes of the party concerned, to be followed after the election are being printed.
7. **Election-campaign :-** An essential stage in the election process is appeal to the voter, to vote for the particular candidate of the party. Various methods like pasteing of posters, holding of public meetings, putting of roadside banners and door to door confessing are used to

convince the voter. This process is known as election campaign. This campaign has to be stopped 48 hours before the voting time.

- 8. Polling, counting of votes and declaration of the results :-** After the polling in all the constituencies within one or two days. Boxes are collected in some centres for counting purpose. Votes are being counted in the presence of the representative of various political parties or candidates. Candidates who secure the maximum number of votes are declared, elected by the returning officer.

All the members of legislative assemblies (M.L.A.s) and members of Lok Sabha (M.Ps) are elected in the same procedure under the supervision of the Returning officer of each constituency.

### Political Parties



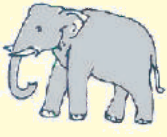

A political party is a voluntary association of people who hold similar views on the various types of the national issues. It is voluntary, because no person can be compelled to join a political party. In other words an association is called Political party when its aim is to gain political power through a democratic process to govern the country. Such an association has similar views on all the social, Economic and political issues. Such political associations, are organised, have set rules and a group of political leader who guide them. But it is expected that all the political parties must promote the national interests.

**Importance :-** Political parties play very important role in the democratic countries. A General view is, that Democracy is not possible without the political parties. In Democratic country every party tries to form its government. Political parties present their programmes and policies before the people. The party in power tries to defend its programme and policies. But the official-opposition party always try to criticise the government functioning. Thus opposition party is also equally important for the success of democracy.


**Functions of political parties :** The most important functions of political parties is to contest elections. Firstly, parties aim at acquiring and retaining power secondly, each party selects its candidates to contest election from various constituencies. Thirdly, the election campaign is conducted for all the party candidates. Fourthly, parties help in the

formulation of the public opinion. Fifthly, the party that gets majority of seats in the legislature is given the responsibility of governing the country. Sixthly, the party who fails to win a clear majority sits in the opposition. Thus they perform useful functions.

### Political Parties (National)

Party symbol	Political Party	Party symbol	Political Party
	Indian National Congress		Bharatiya Janta Party
	Bahujan Samaj Party		Communist Party of India

### Regional Political Party of Punjab

Party symbol	Regional Party
	Shiromani Akali Dal

**Design 22.2** National and Regional Party symbols

All the countries do not have same system of political parties. The political party system can be divided into three categories i.e. one party-system, two party-system and multiparty-system. In India there is multiparty system.

### Political Parties in India

India has two types of political parties-national and regional. The parties which function in four, five or more states are declared National parties, by the election commission. Such parties are Congress, B.J.P., BSP and CPM etc. The parties which have influence only in one or two states are known as regional parties i.e. Akali Dal in Punjab.

#### Indian National Congress

Indian national congress is one of the oldest national party of India which was established in 1885. It has played very important role in the



struggle for Indian freedom. At present Smt. Sonia Gandhi is the President of the Indian national congress.

This party had been in power for a long time since independence. The policies and programmes of its election manifesto are as follows:

1. To establish Democratic Socialism. Hence it has made every effort to reduce the gap between rich and poor.
2. There should be no discrimination between the citizens on grounds of religion and faith in any person. Equal respect should be shown to all religions.
3. Congress Party lay stress on the increase of the agricultural growth and expansion of irrigational potential.
4. All possible efforts shall be made to alleviate poverty by expansion of rural employment.
5. It is in favour of creating friendly relations with all the countries.
6. It stands for encouraging foreign investment to improve the economic condition of the country.

### **Shiromani Akali Dal**

Shiromani Akali Dal was established in 1920. In the beginning, its objective was to get the Sikh Shrines religious places free from the Mahants and to maintain their sanctity. After independence Shiromani Akali Dal played an important role in the Punjab politics. Basically this party is to safeguard the interests of punjabi people. This political party is committed for the social and economic growth of the country by associating itself with another party, with similar political (thinking) Policies and programmes. Thus it has made an alliance with the Bhartiya Janta Party. Akali Dal and BJP both have started a new chapter in the history of centre and state government relationship.

The main objectives of this party is to propagate the “Gurmat Rahit Maryada” and is to remove poverty and casteism according to the Gurmat faith.

### **Role of opposition party**

People’s represenatives who are not elected from the majority party

or the party in power play a vital role in the formation of the government policies. The party with the second largest number of MP's or M.L.A.'s form the official-opposition party. Opposition party is as important as the party in power. It is generally felt that democracy cannot be successful without the presence of the strong opposition party. If the opposition party is allowed to act peacefully in democratic way, it strengthens the Democracy. Because it points out to the shortcomings and lapses of the ruling party. The opposition party does not merely criticise the government in parliament and state legislature. It helps in the formulation of public opinion. Without the presence of a strong opposition party government may become irresponsible, unresponsive and even dictatorial. The opposition party checks the government and opposes any such measure of the government if it poses a threat to the citizen's rights. That is why in Democracy, opposition party is known as watchdog of people's interest.

In India, democracy is more successful because opposition has behaved in a responsible and constructive way.

### **Coalition government**

When sometimes during the general election no political party emerges as majority party, it has to seek help and co-operation from the minority parties to form a government. A government made up from many political parties is known as coalition government. Such coalition government was framed in India after sixth general election in 1977. Again a coalition government was formed after the thirteenth general election which worked from 1999 to 2004. Under the leadership of congress a govt. of U.P.A. was formed. Even after the fourteenth and fifteen General election coalition govt. was formed again. And after the 16th Lok Sabha Elections N.D.A. Was formed under the leadership of B.J.P. During such government ministers are being taken from various political parties. Thus it is believed that the coalition government take more time to reach on certain decisions because the ministers of various political shades and opinions work together.

#### **Points to Remember**

1. We have representative democracy (indirect democracy). In democratic countries people govern themselves indirectly by electing their representatives.
2. Elections and representation are very closely related to each other. An independent institution which conduct elections in our country

is known as Election Commission. This commission conducts elections in a fair and honest manner.

3. In India, now adulthood is attained by the age of 18 years which was earlier 21 years.
4. A government made up from many political parties is known as co-alition government. Such Coalition government was formed in India after sixth general election in 1977.



**I. Answer the following questions in 1-15 words.**

1. What do you mean by Universal Adult Franchise ?
2. Explain two stages of election process in India.
3. Which government is known as representative government ?
4. What is the importance of representation in Democracy ?
5. Who is authorised to cast vote in India ?
6. What is the difference between general-election and mid-term election ?
7. What is the difference between two-party system and multi-party system ?

**II. Answer the following questions in 50-60 words.**

1. What is the importance of representative system ?
2. What is a secret ballot paper ? What is its importance ?
3. Write a short note on the importance of opposition party in democracy ?
4. Write the functions of the political party.
5. Write any two functions of the opposition party.
6. Give any two policies of Indian National Congress.
7. What is the importance of election in democracy ?

**III. Fill in the blanks :**

1. There is \_\_\_\_\_ democracy in India.
2. An independent institution which conduct elections in our country is known as \_\_\_\_\_.
3. An adult of \_\_\_\_\_ years has right to vote in India.
4. \_\_\_\_\_ and \_\_\_\_\_ country has dual party system.
5. One citizen one vote is based on the principle of \_\_\_\_\_.

**IV. True / False :**

1. In India, now adulthood is attained by the age of 18 years. ☐
2. In India, there is two party system. ☐
3. The opposition not merely criticise the government in Parliament and State Legislature but it also helps to formulate the Public Opinion. ☐

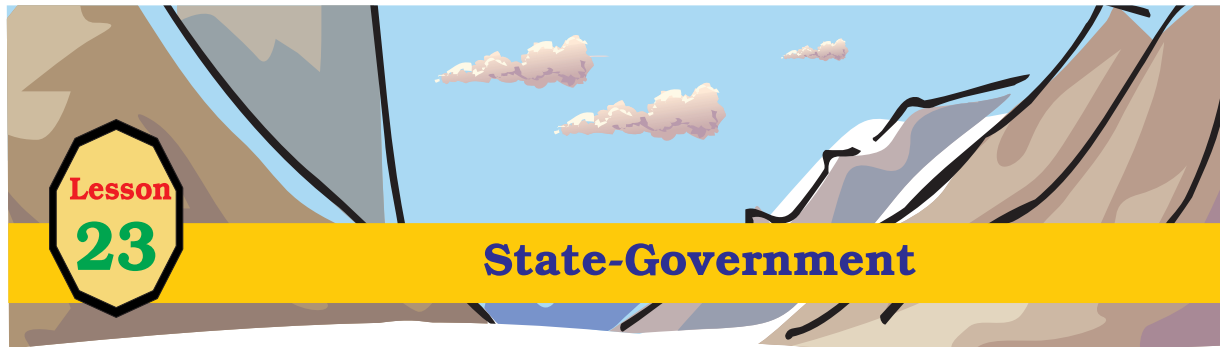
**V. Multiple Choice Questions :**

1. **What is the age of adulthood in India ?**  
 (1) 18 Years                      (2) 24 Years                      (3) 22 Years
2. **For how many years Lok Sabha members are elected ?**  
 (1) Four Years                      (2) Two Years                      (3) Five Years
3. **When was Indian Nation Congress established ?**  
 (1) 1920                              (2) 1885                              (3) 1960



1. Write name of the President of the party in power and opposition party in your state.
2. Write the name of M.L.A. of your constituency and discuss with your teacher the development work done by him in your area.





Indian is known as representative Democracy. To run administration of such a vast country, it has been divided into 29 states and 7 union territories. There is one centre Government and 29 state governments. Like the central government, state government also has three organs i.e. Legislature, Executive and judiciary. Legislature frames laws, executive executes the laws and judiciary punishes the law breakers.

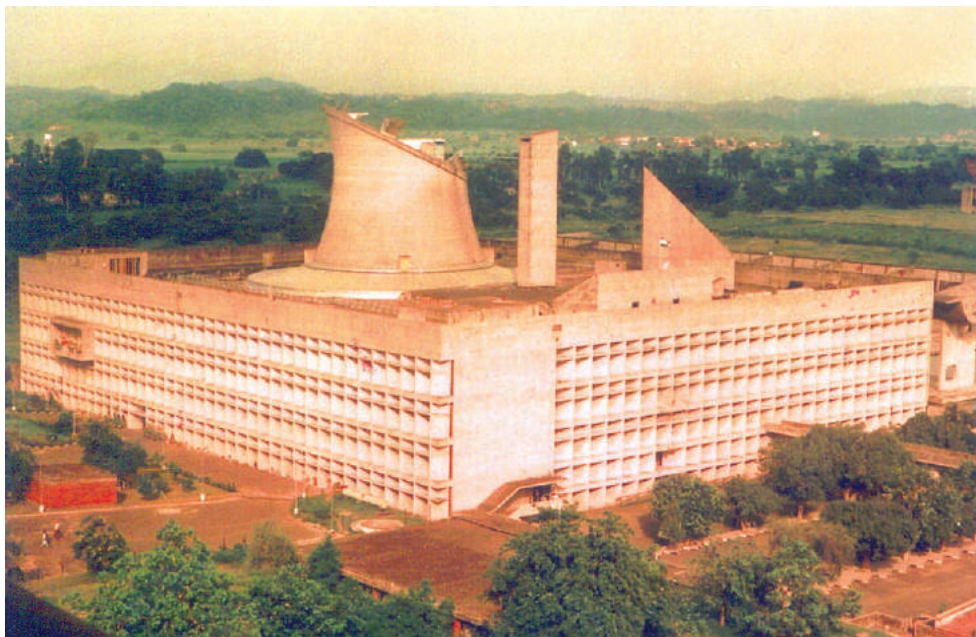


**Design 23.1** Political Map of India



State legislature consists of a Chief Minister and the council of ministers. Whereas Executive consists of a Governor and the council of ministers to assist him, in the performance of his duties. India is a federal form of government. There is division of powers between the union and the state government. According to which the subjects of national importance are given in the union list, subjects of state importance are given in the state list, and the remaining subjects are included in the concurrent list. The state government makes laws on the 66 subjects given in the state list. The State list consists of subjects of state importance like agriculture, land revenue, police and education etc. State laws are enacted by the state legislature and implemented by the State Executive.

Indian, state legislative can be of two types uni-cameral or bi-cameral. Where there is bicameral legislature, the lower house of the state legislature is called legislative assembly and upper house is known as legislative council. Some states in India such as Bihar, Jammu & Kashmir, Karnataka, Andhra Pradesh and Maharashtra have bicameral legislature whereas all other states are unicameral.

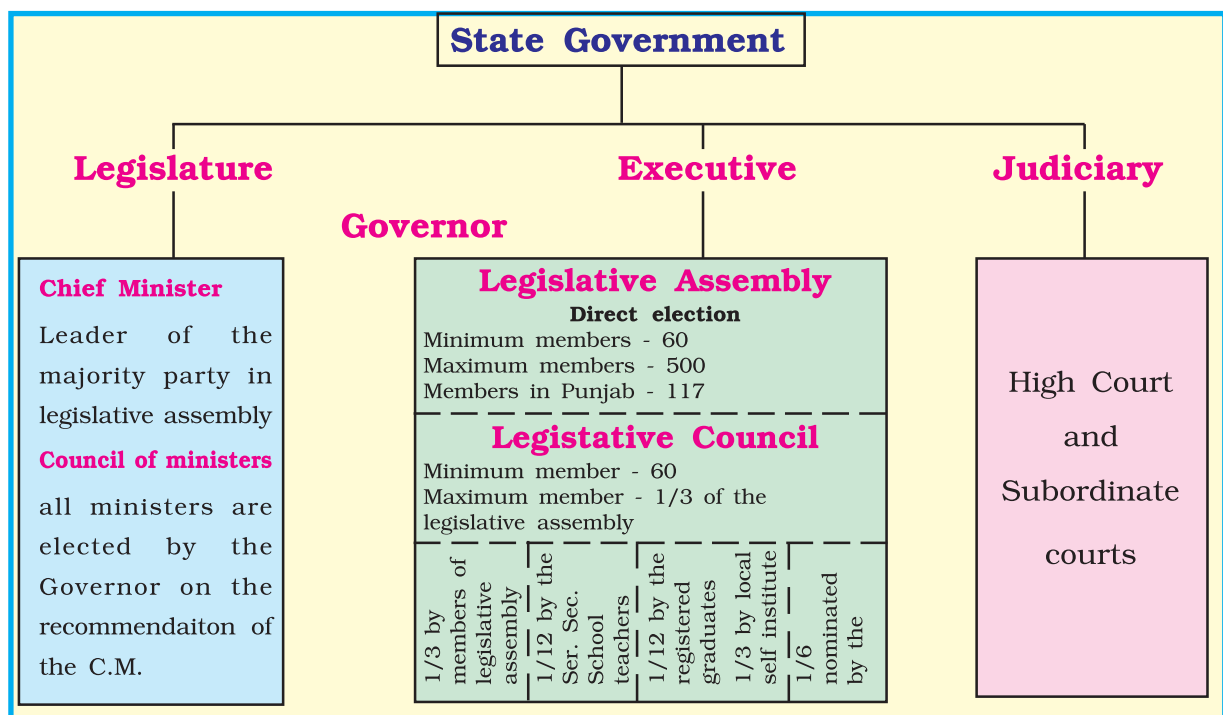


**Design 23.2** Punjab legislative assembly, Chandigarh

**Structure :** Members of state legislature are called MLA (Member of legislative assembly). They are directly elected by the adult voters

(electorate) on the basis of secret ballot system. For the legislative assembly one member is elected from each constituency. The number of M.L.A.'s vary from state on the basis of population. This number varies from minimum 60 to maximum 500, as fixed by the constitution. The number of members of the Punjab Legislative assembly is 117.

Legislative Council is the upper house of state legislature. Its members are indirectly elected. 5/6 of its members are elected (by teachers, members of local self institution, members of legislative assemblies and by registered graduates) and rest of the 1/6 members are being nominated by the governor.



**Design 23.3** Structure of state legislature

There is a speaker and Deputy-speaker in the legislative assembly and chairman and vice-chairman in the legislative council. They are elected from the members themselves.

**Term :-** The term of the legislative assembly is 5 years. It can be dissolved earlier by the Governor of the state. This term can be extended by the president for a period of six months, in case of some internal or external emergency. Whereas the legislative council is a permanent house of state legislature. 1/3 of its members are being retired after every two years. This house can't be dissolved like legislative assembly.

Any citizen of India above the age of 18 can cast his vote, in the election of the state legislature. A person above the age of 25 years can be elected as a member of legislative assembly, whereas the contest election for the Legislative Council a person should be above 30 years of age.

To make state laws, an ordinary bill can be presented by the members in both the houses. Whereas money bill can only be introduced in the legislative assembly. All type of bills, has to be sent for governor's approval, after it has been passed by both the houses of the state assembly.

**Powers of legislature :** It performs the following duties.

1. It frames laws on 66 matters given in the state list.
2. Members of the legislative assembly ask questions from the ministers. As they are responsible for the administration of their concerned departments.
3. It's members can pass no confidence motion against the government.

### State Executive

State Executive consists of a governor and council of ministers to execute the laws framed by the state legislature.

#### Governor

Governor is the head of the state. He is appointed by the president, on the advice of the prime minister. He is appointed for a period of 5 years and can remain in his office till the pleasure of president. President, can also send (transfer) him to some other state.

**Governor has to fulfill following qualifications for the post :**

1. He should be Indian citizen.
2. Above the age to 35.
3. He should be fit mentally as well as physically.
4. He should not be a member of the state assembly.

#### Powers of the Governor

Governor is the nominal head of the state, as president is in the central government. Some times the president takes over the

administration of the state. It so happens in case of some internal or external emergency or failure of state machinery. When President takes over the state administration it is known as President rule. At such time the governor become the real administrator of the state. In ordinary times he enjoys the following powers :-

1. He appoints, the leader of the majority party as chief minister of the state and on his advice appoints the other ministers. He also make some other important appointments in the state.
2. Secondly, he addresses the first inaugural session of both the houses of the state legislature. He can also dissolve the legislative assembly on the advice of council of ministers.
3. He gives assent to all type of (ordinary and Money) bills of state legislature and can also seek president's approval in case of need. He can issue ordinances in the absence of the session of the legislative assembly.
4. He has the power to excuse or reduce the punishment of any criminal.
5. He enjoys certain Discretionary powers, when he is not supposed to seek the advice of the council of ministers - (i) In case of the appointment of the Chief-Minister when there is no majority party he can exercise his own will (ii) He can advise the president to dissolve the state assembly.

In the end, we can say that the Governor is responsible to the president for state administration. In other words he acts as a Representative of central government.

### Who is the Governor of your state ?

### Chief-Minister and the Council of Ministers

Leader of the majority party is appointed as chief minister by the state governor. Then he prepares a list of members who are appointed ministers by the Governor. Ministers are appointed from various parties.

The term of chief minister as well as council of minister is five years. But sometimes Council of ministers can be dissolved earlier by the legislative assembly.

There are three types of ministers in the state council of ministers. They are cabinet ministers, deputy ministers and the state ministers. Cabinet ministers hold important portfolios and deputy ministers as well as state ministers are there to help them, to perform their duties.

The council of ministers work as a team. It is said that they swim and sink together. In case no-confidence motion is passed against a minister, then the entire council of minister has to resign.

### **Powers of the chief minister**

The chief minister perform the following duties as a head of the state government :-

1. He advises and helps the governor in the selection of the council of ministers.
2. He presides over the meetings of the cabinet and act as chief spokesman of the state government.
3. He distributes portfolios among the ministers and appoint Deputy Ministers or state ministers as per need.
4. As a head, of the state government, the chief minister hold responsibility for the administration at the state level. He is also responsible to maintain good relationship with the centre. He acts as an adviser to the chief minister.
5. The chief minister can ask a minister to resign if necessary and can also change the portfolios of the ministers.

Thus the chief minister of the state has very important role to play in the state administration.

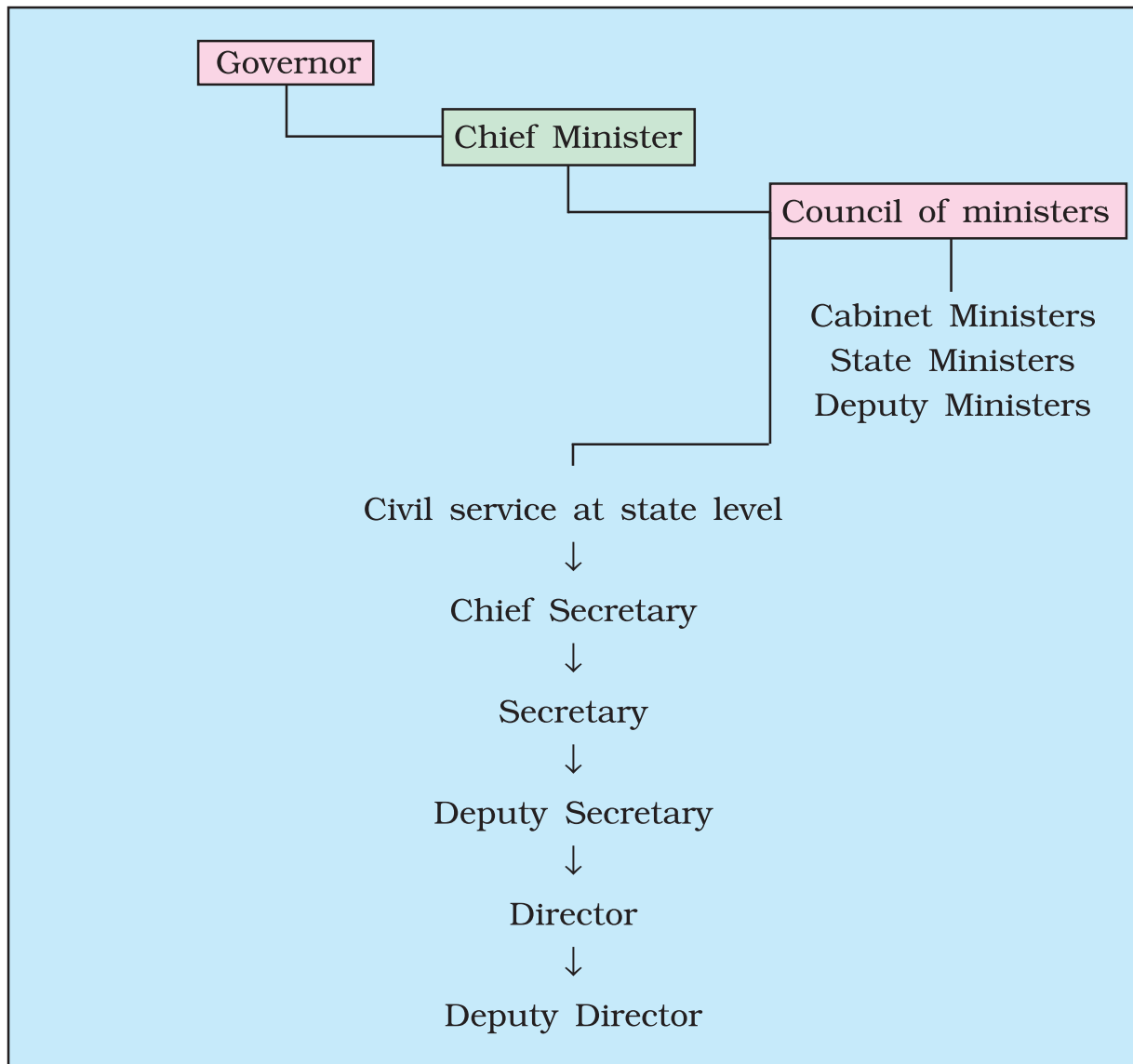
### **State Administration**

The head of the state is the Governor whereas head of the state government is the chief minister. Chief minister is also the head of the council of ministers. Every minister is responsible to perform duties for his particular portfolio. The state list includes subjects like education, irrigation, transport, health and hygiene. Some of the main portfolios of the state government are supervised by the chief minister himself.

The state bureaucracy (public servants) run the administration of the various departments under the guidance of the concerned minister. The executive official of each department is known as secretary. Who



is generally appointed by the union public service commission (on the basis of an all India administrative services Examination.) He is the chief functionary as well adviser to the minister of a department to run administration of the concerned department. He is responsible for all the administrative duties of that department. The working of the secretaries of various departments is being supervised by the chief secretary of the state government.



**Design 23.4** State administration

The office of the secretaries of various departments of the state is known as 'Secretariat'. There is secretariat at state capital in every state. The office of the ministers is also in the building of the secretariat. In

each department there is a deputy secretary, and under secretary, Directors and Deputy Directors under the secretary of each department. All these officials help the secretary to perform the departmental duties efficiently.

The administration is run by the federal government at centre in India. There are 29 states and 7 Union Territories in our country. The capital city of our country is Delhi, which is a union Territory. There is also state assembly. Delhi, is known as 'National Capital Territory'. The administration of 29 states is run by the state governments. But the administration of the union territories is run by the president with the help of the Governor and administrator of the union territories.

### **B. Case Study - Land Reforms**

The objective of the land reforms is to give ownership of land rights to the landless and to provide security of landholding to the marginal and small farmers.

Article 39 of the Indian Constitution lays down that states must make policies. So that all citizens should have the right to the means of livelihood and that all the community resources may be distributed, to serve the common man. Land reforms are being implemented with this aim in mind.

The central Government has taken the following steps for land reforms.

1. The right to property was deleted from the list of fundamental rights.
2. The constitution had been amended 13 times to remove legal obstacles to the land reforms.
3. Every five year plan has emphasised the need for land reforms and laid down the policy guidelines to ensure the same.

Land is a state subject. Hence all state governments were directed to introduce agricultural land ceiling act, to limit the size of landholdings and redistribute the excess land among the landless and the marginal farmers. Thus, every state government has framed laws about this aspect.

Three major types of land reforms, enacted in India after the independence are following :

### **1. The abolition of intermediaries**

Passing of laws dealing with abolition of intermediaries began in 1950 with the Uttar Pradesh 'abolition of zamindari' act. By 1972 all states had passed laws to abolish intermediaries. As a result 20 million cultivators became owners of the land, they tilled and nearly 58 lakh hectares of land got redistributed.

### **2. Regulation of Land holding size**

By 1961-62 all the states has passed laws, enforcing the ceiling on landholding. The ceiling specifications varied from state to state on the categories of the land. In some states it is the family, while in other states it is an individual landholder. The ceiling of land holdings are intended to meet the needs of the landless and to reduce the glaring inequalities in land ownership to encourage the self employment in one's own land.

### **3. Tenancy Reforms**

To regulate the rent paid by the tenant farmers, the first five years plan laid down guidelines that rent should not exceed from one fifth to one fourth of the total produce.

## **Road-Safety**

Children ! Sometimes while travelling by bus or car, you might have heard some body saying, that this place is accident prone, or "Be cautious ! a blind turn ahead," such statements are used as road signs to alert the drivers. In our country thousands of people become victims of road accidents, you have already learnt many things about road safety, Now we shall make you aware about the main causes of road accidents.

- 1. Fast speed :-** Road users generally drive at very high speed, than the prescribed one. Although accident happens because of poor road conditions, heavy traffic, poor weather conditions or the physical and mental condition of the driver. But all these conditions cause accidents because of the high speed of vehicles.
- 2. Changing of Lines :-** All the vehicles should move in the lanes according to their speed limit. Sometimes drivers suddenly change the speed lanes without giving the required signal which causes accidents.

3. **To ignore road signals :-** Some times drivers ignore the road signals while driving vehicles. At times, they try to speed up the vehicles to cross the round about at the movement the green light changes to red. In such situation there is every possibility of an accident.
4. **Distractions :** Some factors like loud music in other vehicles, use of Mobiles, or some attraction things out side, diverts the driver's attention, such distraction becomes a cause of accident.
5. **Overloading of Vehicles :** Most of the time the truckers or private bus owners overload their vehicles with goods or passengers, which hinder the view of other drivers. Thus accident occurs in such a situation.
6. **Lack of visibility :-** Rain, fog, or snowfall hinder the visibility level at night times. This vague vision reduces the front lights of vehicle to the minimum level and becomes a major cause of accidents.
7. **Drunken Driving :-** Alcoholic drinks reduces the driving ability and causes drowsiness to the drivers. This becomes dangerous for pedestrians as well as cyclists, hence they are at great risk to be killed by the driver. Thus avoid drinking, while driving.
8. **Underage Drivers :-** Children below 18 years of age start driving without procuring the required driving license, which is dangerous for their lives as well as for others.
9. **Wrong overtaking :-** This is one of the main cause of accidents. Wrong overtaking sometimes lead to head on collision between two or more than two vehicles. Such type of accidents causes huge economic and human loss. Such collision is also dangerous for the pedestrians as well as the cyclist.
10. **Disobeying the road rules :-** There are some other causes of accident for example. Not wearing helmets or seats belts. playing of vehicles at wrong place, keeping less gap between the vehicles while driving or in case of failure of brakes.

Similarly some more general causes of accidents are as some times cyclist or animals at once appear in front of the driver when it becomes difficult for the driver to control the vehicle.

So all the above given causes of accidents are not mere accidents. They always happens because of some body's carelessness which causes huge economic and human loss to the near and dear one's of somebody. Thus it is our moral duty to take care of ourselves for our own sake as well as for the sake of our family members.

**In case of some roadside accidents our duty is to :-**

- Help the injured persons.
- Give them first aid at once.
- Take them to the hospital if so required.
- Help police in investigation of the case.
- Don't let people gather in huge numbers near the accident spot.
- Boost the morale of the injured persons.

**Points to Remember**

1. Like the central government, state government also has three organs i.e. Legislature, Executive and Judiciary.
2. Legislature frame laws, Executive executes the laws and Judiciary punishes the law breakers.
3. There is division of powers between the union and state government.
4. The state governments makes laws on the 66 subjects given in the states list.
5. State Legislative can be of two types uni-cameral or bi-cameral. Where there is a bi-cameral legislature, the lower house of the state legislature is called legislative assembly and upper house is known as Legislative Council. For example; Punjab has uni-cameral Legislature whereas Jammu & Kashmir has bi-cameral Legislature.
6. Punjab Legislature is unicameral legislature.
7. Members of the state Legislature is called MLA.
8. The number of members of Punjab Legislative assembly is 117.
9. Governor is nominal head of the State while Chief minister has the Executive Powers and C.M. is real had of a state.
10. There are 29 states and 7 union territories in our country.





**I. Answer the following questions in 1-15- words :**

1. Name five states of India having Bicameral legislature.
2. Write two qualifications required for the members of legislative assembly.
3. What qualifications are required for a governor ?
4. Who can be the secretary of some department ?
5. Name out, who is the chief minister and governor of your state ?
6. Who is the executive head of a state ?

**II. Answer the following questions in 50-60 words.**

1. Write in the short the powers of the Governor.
2. Write about the powers and functions of the chief minister.
3. Give in brief the structure of legislative assembly or legislative Council.
4. Which civil officials (Bireaucracy) run the state administration ?
5. Give the discretionary powers of a governor.
6. What type of ministers are there in the council of minister ?
7. What do you know about the term of the state legislature ?

**III. Fill in the blanks :**

1. \_\_\_\_\_ is Governor of Punjab State.
2. The State Legislature of Punjab is \_\_\_\_\_.
3. Money bill can be introduced in \_\_\_\_\_ house of State legislature.
4. The assent of \_\_\_\_\_ is essential for every type of bill.
5. The speaker presides over the meeting of the \_\_\_\_\_ house of State Legislature.

6. \_\_\_\_\_ is the head of the state.
7. Tenure of Council of Ministers is \_\_\_\_\_.
8. \_\_\_\_\_ members of Council of Ministers is nominated by the Governor.

#### IV. True/False :

1. In India, we have one centre Government, 28 State Governments and 7 union territories. ☐
2. The lower house of State Legislature is called Legislative Council. ☐
3. Punjab State Legislature is bicameral legislature. ☐
4. Governor has main executive power with him. ☐
5. The Right of property is a fundamental right. ☐

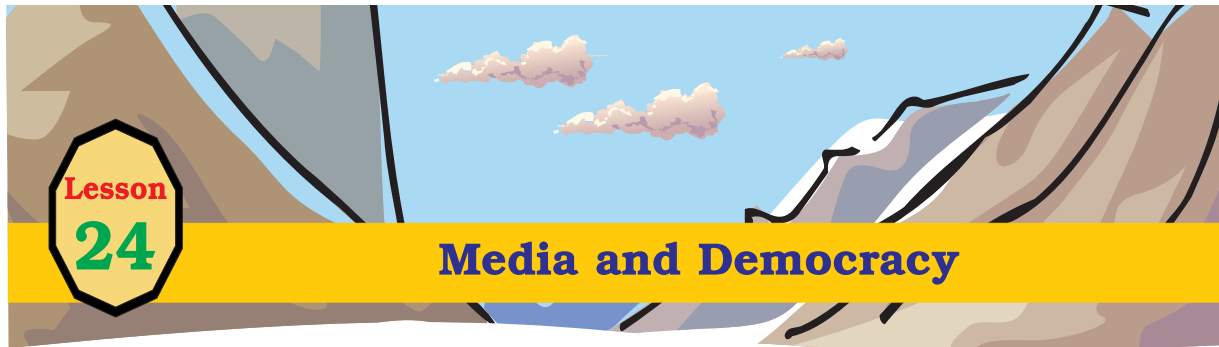
#### V. Multiple Choice Questions :

1. **How many states are there in India ?**  
 (1) 21                      (2) 25                      (3) 29
2. **How many members are in Punjab Legislative Assembly ?**  
 (1) 117                      (2) 60                      (3) 105
3. **By Whom the Chief Minister is elected ?**  
 (1) By President      (2) By Governor      (3) By Speaker



1. Paste the pictures of the chief minister and governor of your state in your note book and write five sentences about them.
2. Write the details of some road accident you have seen and write how you helped the injured persons.





Various means to communicate information and ideas to a group of people is called media. The main means of media are Newspaper, Television, Cinema, Political Parties and press etc. All these means are of great importance in the Democratic set up of a country. The most important means to communicate with the people is the press through which Newspapers, Magazines and books are being printed. These means influence the day-to-day life of the people to a great extent. It is because of this that Press is known as the light house of democracy.

### **Press is the light house of Democracy**

As we know Democracy is a government of the people by the people and for the people. The media inform the people about the various types of happenings and events in the country. It also informs the people about the real working of the government.

The real role of the media is to form the Public Opinion. It is an educated instrument, to inform people about the working of the government as well as other social organisations. It is the basic forum of the political information and Public discussion. It helps the citizens to take decision on public matters.

**Media is the key to disciplined participation of the citizens**

### **Media-agencies**

The main agencies to communicate the information to the Public and frame the Public opinion are as following :

#### **1. Printing Media/Press**

The most important agency of media to form the public opinion is Press which includes the newspapers and magazines. Daily newspapers

and magazines, not only provide knowledge of the national and international events but they educate the people about the policies, programmes and organization of different political parties. Newspapers also guide the people to frame and express their opinion about various parties.



**Design 24.1** Newspaper - Main source of media

The freedom of Press from the government influence, in the democratic countries is very important to expose the real working of the government.

### **Electronic Means of Mass Communication**

The Television, Radio and computer are very important means of mass communication which forms and express the Public opinion. Illiterate people can form their opinion only by listening news on T.V. as well as Radio, where as the print-media can be utilized only by the educated class.

Cinema also helps in the formation of the Public opinion. Along with the entertainment, people get knowledge about various types of the current problems and some moral message through cinema. Thus people make their contribution in the government activities by expressing their views on the Social Problems through cinema.

## Political Parties

Political parties educate the people about the government's shortcomings by holding meetings and election manifestoes. Thus the political parties help in the formation as well as expression of the public opinion.

## Elections

During Election the party in power inform people about its achievements, success and about the weak points of the opposition party. People form their opinion by listening to the leaders of various political parties about the national and international issues.

All the above given means of media help the democracy to be more effective and successful.

## Media Ethics and Accountability

Media is expected to communicate, the fair and true information to the people. It's responsibility is to present true picture of individual as well as Social Organizations, before the Public. So that they may be able to form right opinion. Media activity should be based on the principle of public welfare. The social responsibility of the media is to pass on or communicate the right information to the public. This communication should be such that all the citizens of the country should be self disciplined, with impressive participation.

## Basic Ethics of Media

Along with the social responsibility of media, it has certain basic Ethics or values to be observed. Thus the objectives of media should be as following.

- It should find the truth and inform.
- Information should be least harmful.
- Right opinions should be presented with freedom.
- Perform the Social Responsibility in right way.

Thus, media is expected to guide the democracy by being fair and providing true picture of events before the Public. In short, it should serve the public sincerely and honestly.



### Case Study of R.T.I.

The provision of the Right to information means that people have right to take information about any aspects of the government department which has direct or indirect effect on them. For example if a case is filed against an individual, he has the right to know its reason. Thus people has the right to know about the government affairs and the functioning of various government departments, their income and expenditure etc. Earlier it was not so, now some state governments has made some provisions regarding it. First of all Rajasthan government made such laws in 2000. Under this the people has got the right to seek information about the government administration. Then similar acts were passed by Tamilnadu, Karnataka, Maharastra, Goa and Punjab.

According to the right to information every citizen has the right to enquire about the wrong actions of an official and can put a check on it. This right to information will have very strong impact on the prevailing corruption in our the country.

### Advertising

When a producer or an industrialist has produced a thing or product and wants to sell it to the maximum number of people, he can do so through advertising. Thus mass selling is possible only through advertising. Advertising is the best way of mass communication, which creates a vast market for the product.

**Objectives of Advertising :-** Generally advertising is a mode of mass communication of some product. Advertisement can be of a product, service or opinion. The demand of the product increases with the advertisement. The main objectives of the advertisement are :-

- (a) To inform the masses that from where to buy the product and how to use it. That is to communicate information about a particular, product service or brand.
- (b) To persuade the people to buy product.
- (c) The institutional advertisement is regarding keeping the organization in public

**Types of Advertisement :-** Advertisement is mainly of two types.

1. Commercial Advertisement.
2. Social Advertisement.

## Commercial Advertisement

A major portion of advertising is commercial advertisement which is linked with consumers or buyers. The purchaser of consumable goods form a major part of consumers, who buy things for their personal use or for their households. The number of buyers of consumer goods like food items, milk products, grocery items, cloth and cloth items, electronic goods such as refrigerators, radios, transistors, washing machines etc. is generally very large. Such items are widely distributed over a vast area. To attract the Purchaser in great number, many types of advertising tools used are newspapers, magazines, television and radio etc.



**Design 24.2** A view of commercial advertisement

The oldest form of advertising is probably the street hawkers. The merchants selling wares on a city streets are known as hawkers. In many countries of the world street vendors or hawkers still advertise their goods in this way. Goods like vegetables, fruits and milk products are still sold by streel vendors in India in the urban as well as rural areas.

Advertisements are introduced to promote the sale of the advertised products by approaching directly to the consumer. This type of advertisement is referred to as consumer advertisement.

## Social Advertisement

Social advertising is that type of advertisement which seeks to

promote important social issues such as family planning, AIDS awareness, respect for female child, communal harmony, national integration and help for disaster victims etc.



**Design 24.3** Road safety rules (Social Advertisement)

Social advertisement is done as a part of social responsibility by the advertising agencies, social service agencies, non-government organizations or by the government itself. Social advertisement has proved very effective and successful. Such advertisements have gone a long way, not only in eradicating the social evils; but also in encouraging

### Do Not Mix Drinking with Driving

the public, to extend a helping hand to the needy people. For example, many road safety advertisements on road side, regarding safe driving make people alert, regarding road safety rules.

**ਨਸ਼ਾ ਛੱਡੋ, ਕੋਹੜ ਵੱਢੋ।**  
**ਤੁਕੋ, ਛਰਾ ਸੋਢੋ ਕਿ ਇਹ ਚਾਰ ਟੁਕਾਨੂੰ ਸੋਡ ਵੱਲ ਤਾਂ ਨਹੀਂ ਲਿਆ ਚਿਹਾ, ਇਸ ਤੋਂ ਬਚੋ।**  
 ਤਸ਼ਕੀਰੀ ਜਿਹਨਾਂ ਦੀ ਸਮੱਗਰੀ ਖਰੀਦੀ ਹੈ ਜਿਸ ਕਾਰਨ ਬਹੁਤ ਸਾਰੀਆਂ ਹਿੰਮਾਈਆਂ ਆ ਪੋਰਵੀਆਂ ਹਨ ਜਿਵੇਂ ਕੈਂਸਰ, ਜਿਗਰ ਖਰਾਬ, ਹਾਫਟ ਅਟੈਕ, ਫੋਫੜਿਆਂ ਦਾ ਖਰਾਬ ਹੋਣਾ, ਖੁਰਦਵੀ ਚਮੜੀ, ਕਮਜ਼ੋਰ ਨਾਤੀਆਂ, ਟੇਂਡਰ, ਯਾਦਾਸਤ ਕਮਜ਼ੋਰ, ਆਰਥਿਕ ਨੁਕਸਾਨ, ਪਰਿਵਾਰਿਕ ਜੀਵਨ ਭਰਾਪ ਅਤੇ ਸਮਾਜ ਤੋਂ ਟੁੱਟਣਾ ਆਦਿ।

**ਤਿਆਜ਼ ਨਹੀਂ ਕਿਸੇ ਵੀ ਸਰਕਾਰੀ ਹਸਪਤਾਲ, ਜਿਸ਼ਾ ਵੈੱਡ ਕਰਾਸ ਨੁਸਾਇਟੀ ਰੂਪਨਗਰ ਜਾਂ ਰੁਰਮੀਤ ਸਰਕਰ ਟਰੇਸਟ ਅਨੰਦਪੁਰ ਸਾਹਿਬ ਨਸ਼ਾ ਛੁਡਾਉ ਕੇਂਦਰ ਨਾਲ ਸੰਪਰਕ ਕਰੋ।**  
 ਅੱਪ ਦਾ ਬੰਬ ਜਾਂ ਪਰਿਵਾਰ ਦਾ ਮੈਂਬਰ ਨਸ਼ਾ ਛਰਾ ਹੈ ਜਾਂ ਨਹੀਂ। ਇਹ ਜਾਣਨ ਲਈ, ਉਸ ਦੇ ਖੂਨ ਅਤੇ ਪਿਸ਼ਾਬ ਦੀ ਜਾਣਕਾਰੀ ਜਾਂਚ ਜ਼ਰੂਰ ਕਰਵਾਉ।

**ਕਾਨੂੰਨੀ ਤੌਰ ਤੇ ਵਰਜਿਤ ਨਸ਼ੀਲੀਆਂ ਦਵਾਈਆਂ ਦਾ ਵਪਾਰ ਕਰਨ ਵਾਲਿਆਂ ਅਤੇ ਖਪਤਕਾਰਾਂ ਲਈ ਸਜ਼ਾ:-**  
 ਨਸ਼ੀਲੀਆਂ ਦਵਾਈਆਂ ਦਾ ਵਪਾਰ ਕਰਨਾ ਅਤੇ ਵਿਕਰੀ/ਗਿਰਤ ਉਪਯੋਗ ਕਰਨਾ ਕਾਨੂੰਨੀ ਰੁਕਾਮ ਹੈ ਅਤੇ ਐਨ.ਪੀ.ਐਸ. ਐਕਟ 1985 ਦੇ ਅਧੀਨ ਹੋਰ ਸਿਖੀਆਂ ਸਜ਼ਾਵਾਂ ਦੇ ਸ਼ਾਮਲੀਆਂ ਹਨ।

**ਪਾਪਿਲੀ ਖਾਣ ਪਤਲੇ ਕਾਣੇ ਤੋਂ** 10 ਸਾਲ ਦੀ ਸਜ਼ਾ ਕੈਦ ਅਤੇ 1 ਲੱਖ ਰੁਪਏ ਜੁਰਮਾਨਾ  
**ਪਾਪਿਲੀ ਖਾਣ ਪਤਲੇ ਕਾਣੇ ਤੋਂ** 15 ਸਾਲ ਦੀ ਸਜ਼ਾ ਕੈਦ ਅਤੇ 1-5 ਲੱਖ ਰੁਪਏ ਜੁਰਮਾਨਾ  
**20 ਸਾਲ ਦੀ ਸਜ਼ਾ ਕੈਦ ਅਤੇ 2 ਲੱਖ ਰੁਪਏ ਜੁਰਮਾਨਾ**  
**30 ਸਾਲ ਦੀ ਸਜ਼ਾ ਕੈਦ ਅਤੇ 3 ਲੱਖ ਰੁਪਏ ਜੁਰਮਾਨਾ**

**ਸੁਧਾਨ/ਸਿਕਾਇਤ ਕਿਰੀ:-**  
 (1) ਫਾਇਰਿੰਗ, ਸਮਾਜਿਕ ਸੁਰੱਖਿਆ ਅਤੇ ਸੰਸਕਰੀ ਦੇ ਰਾਜ ਵਿਰਾਸ ਪੰਜਾਬ ਐਸ.ਐਸ.ਓ. ਨੰਬਰ 102-103, ਸਿਰਸਾ 34-ਏ, ਫੋਫੜਿਆਂ - 0172-2602726, (2) ਸਿਰਸੀ ਐਲੀਕਸ ਰੂਪਨਗਰ - 01881-221150  
 (3) ਰੋਜ਼ ਐਸ.ਐਸ.ਓ. ਰੂਪਨਗਰ-01881-220946, (4) ਰਿਸ਼ਾ ਕਮਾਨਿਕ ਸਿਰਸੀ ਅਰਾਜ ਰੂਪਨਗਰ - 01881-222592, (5) ਰਾਜ ਵਿਰਾਸ ਪੰਜਾਬ ਅਰਾਜ ਰੂਪਨਗਰ - 01881-225539,  
 (6) ਰਿਸ਼ਾ ਰੋਜ਼ ਐਸ.ਐਸ.ਓ. ਰੂਪਨਗਰ - 01881-221167, (7) ਰੂਪਨਗਰ ਸਮਾਜ ਸੇਵਾ ਕਮਿਸ਼ਨ ਸਾਹਿਬ - 01881-233446, 235606 (ਨਸ਼ਾ ਛੁਡਾਉ ਕੇਂਦਰ)।

**ਨੋਟ:-** ਜੇਕਰ ਅੱਪ ਚਾਹੁੰਦੇ ਹੋ ਕਿ ਛਰ ਜਾਂ ਕਿਸੇ ਹੋਰ ਕਾਰਨ ਅੱਪ ਦਾ ਨਾਂ ਗੁਪਤ ਰੱਖਿਆ ਜਾਵੇ, ਤਾਂ ਗੁਪਤ ਰੱਖਿਆ ਜਾਵੇਗਾ।  
 ਸਾਰੀ ਕਰਵਾ:- ਸਮਾਜਿਕ ਸੁਰੱਖਿਆ ਅਤੇ ਵਿਸ਼ਵਕੀ ਦੇ ਬਾਲ ਵਿਕਾਸ, ਪੰਜਾਬ ਐਸ.ਐਸ.ਓ. ਨੰਬਰ 102-103 ਸੇਕਟਰ 34-ਏ ਚੰਡੀਗੜ੍ਹ  
 ਟੈਲੀਫੋਨ ਨੰ. ਤ:- 0172-2602726, ਫੈਕਸ ਨੰਬਰ:- 0172-2604533  
 ਫੋਨ:- ਸੀਨੀਅਰ ਪੁਲਿਸ ਕਮਿਸ਼ਨ ਰੂਪਨਗਰ, ਟੈਲੀਫੋਨ ਨੰਬਰ:- 01881-220119, ਦਫਤਰ:- 220946, ਫੋਟੋਕਲ ਰੂਮ:- 221273-100

**Design 24.4** Drug De-addiction advertisement



Social advertisement create an awareness for various types of social causes like handicapped children and their help, blood donation, drug de-addiction, national integration, family planning, dowry system, respect for female child etc.

Many a times you might have read in the newspaper that a patient with kidney failure is unable to afford, transplantation of kidney. At such occasions, many individual or social organization come forward to help monetarily to such needy patients. All such type of social advertisements are very useful for the welfare of the society.



**Design 24.5** Polio Drop Campaign (Advertiment and Social)

### Basic rules for Advertisement

For every type of commercial or social advertisement there are certain basic rules which must be observed seriously :

1. Advertisement should always be designed as to confirm to the law of the country.
2. It should not go against morality, decency and religious susceptibility of the people.
3. It should not contain any type of derogatory references to another product or service.
4. In case of commercial advertisement, the information to the consumer on the matter of weight, quality or price of products should be correct.

### Advertisement regulations

There is nothing good or bad about advertising. It is a tool, an instrument. It can be used well or it can be used badly. Efforts has been increasing to Protect the Public interest by regulating the content of advertising. For example the ban on tobacco advertisement on television has been imposed in the U.S.A. Advertising has an indirect but powerful impact on society to influence media.

Advertising can play very important role in the process of human development. Moreover, advertising can itself contribute to the betterment of the society. It uplifts and inspires people and motivate them to act in the way that benefit themselves and other.

In the end we can say that media and advertising are very important for Democracy. The process of advertising is possible only through media. These both are essential for the success of democracy. But advertising and media must work on some ethical values for the welfare as well as for the progress of the country. As media is important for the establishment of a better society. Similarly advertising is an important instrument for the progress of the society. Advertising can brighten lives simply by being witty tasteful and entertaining.

#### Points to Remember

1. Various means to communicate information and ideas to a group of people is called media.
2. Press is known as the light house of democracy.
3. The provision of the Rights of information means that people have right to take information about any aspects of the government department which has direct or indirect effect on them.
4. Advertisement are meant for commercial and social issues.
5. Advertisements are introduced to promote the sale of the advertised products by approaching directly to the consumer. This type of advertisement is consumer advertisement.
6. Social advertisement is that type of advertisement which seeks to promote important social issues.



#### I. Answer the following questions in 1-15 words.

1. What is the relationship between media and advertising ?
2. Write name of the electronic means of advertisement.



3. What do you mean by the Right to information ?
4. What do you know about advertisement ?
5. How many types of advertisements are there ?
6. What are the main objectives of advertising ?
7. What do you mean by social advertisement ?

**II. Answer the following questions in 50-60 words.**

1. What do you mean by commercial advertising ?
2. What techniques are used by the advertisers to shape Public attitude towards their products ?
3. Give name of some social advertisements.
4. What is the need of regulations in advertisement ?
5. What ethics are required to be followed by the media ?

**III. Fill in the following blanks :**

1. Media is the ..... to inform the people about the shortcomings of the existing system.
2. Main role of Media is to provide ..... .
3. .... means to fulfill one's responsibilities properly.
4. Advertising is different on the basis of their ..... .
5. To increase the ..... of the product is one of the main objective of commercial advertisement.

**IV. True/False :**

1. Various means to communicate information and ideas to a group of people is called media. ☐
2. Press is known as the light-house of democracy. ☐
3. Types of Advertisement–Commercial advertisement and Social advertisement. ☐

**V. Multiple Choice Questions :**

1. **Write Name of the electronic means of Media ?**  
(1) Newspapers      (2) Magazine      (3) Television

2. **Name the main types of advertisements.**

(1) Two

(2) Four

(3) Six

3. **In which country Press is known as light-house of Democracy ?**

(1) Afghanistan

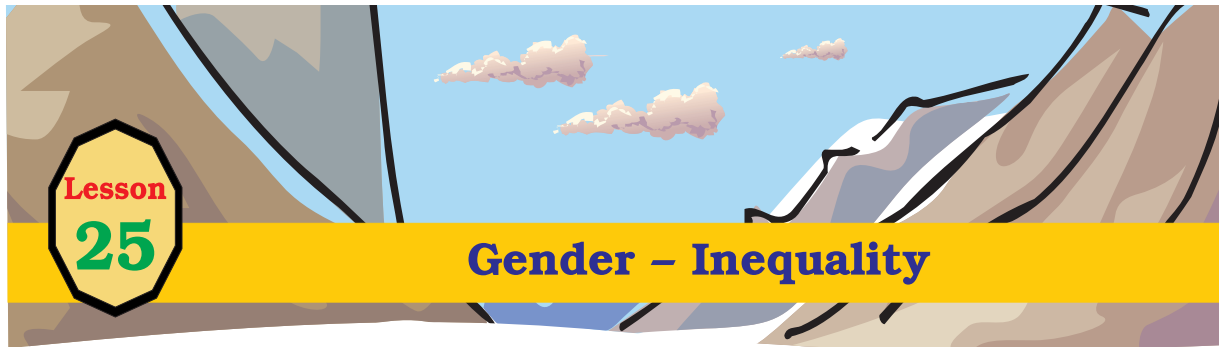
(2) India

(3) China



Paste five pictures of some social advertisements on a chart paper and write 5 sentences each about their importance.





Our society suffers from many social evils. One of them is gender inequality. When distinction is made between male and female and unequal treatment is meted out to boys and girls in the society, it is called gender inequality. This inequality is prevalent in many underdeveloped as well as developing countries of the world. Gender inequality is a social construct and is not determined by the biological difference.

To make it clear, we can say that there are two kinds of differences between women and men; sex and gender. Sex is determined by Physical differences, visible in males and females. Gender is different. It refers to the socially determined differences between the two sexes. Thus gender inequality is a different set of social behaviour towards boys and girls or males and females. There are two basis for this inequality :-

1. Mutual relationship between men and woman.
2. Social rules in their societies or communities.

On the basis of birth there are biological as well as nature differences between the males and females. Gender inequality indicates different type of behaviour which is different in different societies. In the modern developed society, boys are still considered more powerful and strong; which is illogical or contradictory to the laws of nature. So a biased attitude towards girls is known as gender inequality.

Since ancient time, women is considered to be weaker than men in every respect. She was never allowed to be independent. She is taken as physically and mentally weaker than men. This type of attitude in different societies of the world, is different on the basis of castes, religions and cultures.

Till now we find that women cover their face before leaving home in certain communities. While on the other side Indian women Kalpna Chawala has touched the new heights in the infinite space limits. Now we will see that how this inequality is creating its impact on different levels of the social set up :-

### (a) Gender Inequality – Family

Family is the most important social organization which contribute towards developing the social attitude of a child. The way parents behave with their children – sons and daughters. Parental attitude has deep rooted impact on the child's impressionable mind. In case parents behave equally to both the sexes, the problem of gender inequality will be reduced in the future. If the home duties are not allotted on the basis of sex, the mental development of children can be the balanced one.



**Design 25.1** A man running a machine

Family is the first social unit, where the individual development of child's mind take place. In the impressionistic period of child's life, the feeling of dependency and helplessness are being instilled along the girls. The boys, and girls are expected to behave differently. Our's is a man dominated society. Females are taken granted for child rearing and house-hold chores.

In most of the countries, males and females are brought up for different type of roles. Generally males are trained by parents for outside duties. Whereas girls are trained for motherhood and household chores from the very childhood. Thus till the children reach the school going age their minds are being impressioned for different types of compartmentalized roles. Although the gender based behaviour of parents effects both the sexes, but their behaviour is biased especially for the daughters which ultimately sows the seeds of gender inequality in the society.

## **(b) Gender Inequality – School**

Gender equality exists when both the male and female have equal opportunities. Till today strength of the school going males is more than the females. Girls don't have equal opportunities of education. In the field of education, it is the major responsibility of the school to bring the required change in child's mind for gender equality. This is possible by giving equal opportunities of education to both the sexes; So that positive attitude of society towards females may be developed.

## **(c) Community**

From time to time the role of gender had been changing. The control of man over women depends upon the culture of a particular community. The biased role of community depends upon the type of duties given to the male and female. The mutual relations of man and woman in the community also throw light on the gender role. Now-a-days although women are also working as professionals in the field jobs, but they are not being spared from their duties at home. Thus their burden has been doubled.

## **Social inequality is gender based**

Principally man and woman are equal on the basis of fundamental rights and duties, given in the constitution. In modern, democratic countries, although constitutionally men and women enjoy equal rights and duties. But, it is not so in practice. Till few years back, majority of men were there in the centres of higher studies. But now females are proving their worth better than males in the field of professionalism.

Statistics shows that still only by 43% of females population goes to school. They are obstructed from studying for the sake of household work.

## **Causes of unequal behaviour towards woman in India**

Indian woman are suffering from gender inequality on the following basis.

- 1. Biased attitude :** In our society birth of a son is celebrated in the family. It is general opinion of the Indian Society that the boys are the carrier of their lineage rather than the girls. Because the girls are to be sent to their in-laws family with dowry. Thus birth of a girl



child is considered to be a bundle of responsibilities or liabilities for the parents.

2. **Female infanticide** : The practice of female infanticide is prevalent in our country. It is the main cause of decreasing sex ratio of girls as compared to boys. Indian government is trying to curb this practice of female infanticide.
3. **Poor health and poor diet of girls** : In Indian tradition boys are better fed as compared to girls. Similarly the pregnant women are not given proper diet which results in the birth of malnourished infants.
4. **Lack of Female Education** : In the Indian Society women are looked down upon as domestic workers. Thus they are not being educated like boys. Parents are more worried about son's education. Although girls are taking lead in the field of education by giving better performance than boys.
5. **Child Marriage** : Child Marriage is still prevalent in certain parts of India. Though government has legalized 18 years of age for girl's marriage. But in spite of the legislation, people in the backward area still marry their daughters in early age, which has bad effect on their health.
6. **Dowry System** : Dowry system is another reason of female infanticide. People think that birth of a daughter is an economic burden on them. Many a times some girls commit suicide when their parents could not fulfill the dowry demands, made by the in-laws family.
7. **Opposition of widow marriage** : Our society does not accept remarriage of a widow. Still in some parts of India some widows are adamant to commit Sati, though government has legally opposed the Sati System. But this practice is still prevalent in some backward societies in India.
8. **Poor position and lack of empowerment of women** : Although Indian constitution has ensured equal rights to woman. But in practice the traditions are still different. Till now woman is not given equal status in the political as well as social field. Thus there is great need of women empowerment in the Indian Society.

The above factors show that how badly gender inequality is prevalent in our society.

### **Economic factors**

Although, constitutionally, women has got equal right to share the property of their parents. But in practice it is not so.

The scenario of Indian society is so bad. That women who look after the household affairs, along with their jobs, are sometimes physically mishandled by their husbands. Indian government has recently passed a bill, according to which men can be punished if they will beat or physically mishandle their wives.



**Design 25.2** Legal equality for man and woman

### **Invisible labour of Women**

Everyone is well aware about the importance of, the role of women as a daughter, wife and a mother. The importance of women is being ignored, by overlooking the multidimensional role played by them. Though women is playing important role in home, fields, offices and other social organizations. But still, the society has got negative attitude towards them and think that she is meant for domestic work only. Women's contribution is significant in the economic growth of the country. Generally the money earned by woman is also controlled by men or husbands.

Thus, there is dire need to empower women. Although the Indian government is taking appreciable steps towards the quality of both male and female in educating women. It will help to reduce the gender inequality among both the male and female.

### **Contribution of Indian Social Reformist towards women equality**

In the ancient times also efforts were made to raise the social status of women. Raja Ram Mohan Roy emphasized the widow remarriage and women education. In 1829, they got the law passed against Sati System from the Britishers. Similarly Ishwar Chander Vidyasagar opposed the

child marriage and encouraged the widow remarriage. The founder of Arya Samaj— Swami Dayanand Saraswati opposed the prevalent Sati System and female infanticide. The social and religious reformist of Nineteenth Century gave various types of suggestions to improve the condition of women. Although there had been a slow change in social set up. But the movement of bringing change in social status of women is quite old in our country.

### **Steps taken by the Indian Government**

Girls and women are being dominated by men since centuries. Thus after independence Indian government has made following efforts to reduce this social problem :

1. Women are given equal right to share parental property.
2. Dowry system has been declared illegal.
3. Women education is being stressed.

Our is a democratic country where women has been given equal right to vote and parental property. Declaring of dowry taking as illegal, also indicates the equality of women.

In the end we can say that the most urgent step to reduce gender inequality is to encourage women education. Because, only educated mothers can understand the importance of sending their daughters to school, taking care of family member's health, to have small family etc. The educated women cannot be easily exploited.

While going through the world statistics it is found that out of 130 millions of (school going age) children (6-11 year) not going to the school 60% are girls. Although women education is the best social investment. But on seeing these figures we find that inequality is still prevailing in various parts of the world as far as education is still prevailing in various parts of the world as far as education of the girl's is concerned. An educated women is skilled, knowledgeable and self confident. Now need of the time is that woman would be a good citizen, family member and a perfect mother.

Some times back the World Bank has in its report "Engendering Development" has expressed that "Gender equality is the key to social development." It has described that such nations where women has been

given proper rights and an approach to economic resources have better economic growth and less corruption.

### Points to Remember

1. Gender inequality is a different set of Social behaviour towards boys and girls.
2. Family is the first social unit, where the individual development of child mind take place.
3. Statistics shows that still only by 43% of females population goes to school.
4. Female infanticide mean: for want of a male child girl infant are killed before their birth.
5. The government has legalised 18 years of age for girls marriage.
6. In ancient times also, efforts were made to raise the social status of women. Ishwar Chand Vidya Sagar opposed the child marriage and encouraged the widow marriage. The founder of Arya-Samaj- Swami Dayanand Saraswati opposed the Sati-System and female infanticides.
7. World Statistics shows that out of 130 millions of school going age children (6-11 years) are not going to the schools. 60% of them are girls.



#### I. Answer the following questions in 1-15 words :

1. What do you understand by gender inequality ?
2. What do you know about Gender ?
3. Do you consider your sister equal to you ?
4. Tell a point where women are discriminated ?
5. Can education help to reduce gender inequality ?
6. Does Indian traditions encourage the gender inequality ?

**II. Answer the following questions in 70-75 words :**

1. Give three points of gender inequality in the social field.
2. Write in brief the gender inequality in the economic sphere.
3. Give two factors which help to continue gender inequality.
4. Give reasons why women should be given equal rights.
5. What steps are taken by Indian Government to improve the status of women ?

**III. Fill in the following blanks :**

1. Gender Inequality is \_\_\_\_\_ problem.
2. Male and female are \_\_\_\_\_ treated equally.
3. \_\_\_\_\_ is the first social unit.
4. Girls are mainly trained for \_\_\_\_\_ affairs.
5. Swami Dayanand was \_\_\_\_\_ women equality.
6. \_\_\_\_\_ is that where for want of a male child, girls infants are killed before their birth.
7. While providing meal to \_\_\_\_\_ discrimination is made.

**IV. True/False :**

1. Family is the first social unit. ☐
2. Girls don't have equal opportunities of education. ☐
3. Indian women are not suffering from gender inequality. ☐
4. Our society accepts remarriage of a widow gracefully. ☐
5. Sati System and child marriage is prohibited by law. ☐

**V. Multiple Choice Questions :**

1. **Which Social reformer got the law passed against Sati System from the Britishers ?**  
(1) Swami Dayanand Saraswati  
(2) Ishwar Chand Vidya Sagar  
(3) Raja Ram mohan Rai



2. **Write the percentage of school-going girls in society today.**

(1) 43%

(2) 45%

(3) 65%

3. **Which age is legalized for girl's marriage in Indian Society ?**

(1) 21 year

(2) 15 year

(3) 18 year



Discuss the Gender inequality with your teacher. Describe the situation in your home and tell how can you help to reduce women equality.





In simple words, market is a place, where the things of daily needs are available. Where consumers come to buy various type of daily need things i.e. vegetable, fruits, groceries, cloths etc. The sellers of goods are known as salesman where as the persons who buy goods are known as purchaser or consumer. The entire process of sale and purchase is known as trade. The place where the activities of sale and purchase take place is known as a market or bazaar.

Marketing is the process by which wholesaler or companies promote the sale of their goods. Modern concept of Marketing is different from the ancient concept. According to the ancient concept, marketing was related to the physical distribution of goods and services. Modern concept of Marketing is very broad, according to which the Producer tries to understand the needs and want to the consumer.

**Trade establishes a link between the producers and the consumers through traders.**

According to the modern view, marketing consists of sensing, increasing, servicing and satisfying the needs and wants of present and possible customers is more effective and efficient manner than its competitors. According to this concept, all goals can be achieved by identifying and satisfying the needs and wants of the customers. Now-a-days in the era of marketing, customer is supreme. That is why customer is known as “**King**”.

There are two types of markets – Wholsale Market and Retail Market. The whole sale market is controlled by the wholesalers whereas retail market is controlled by the retailers.

**Wholesaler :** The functions of the wholesale market is to buy the goods from wholesaler or producers and sell it directly to the customer. The wholesale shopkeepers are known as wholesalers.

**Retailers :** The retailers, purchase the goods from the wholesaler and passes them to the customers. The retailers generally, sell many type of goods. They are not directly related with the producers. Because they buy their goods from the wholesaler. The retailers act as an agent between the wholesaler and the consumer. They, generally buy the goods on credit from the wholesaler and sells to the consumer on cash. The wholesaler is not accessible to the consumer.

**Type of Retailers :** Retailers are of many types. Broadly speaking they are divided into two parts :-

- 1. Itenerant Retailers :** Movable retailers are those who sell their goods by moving from place to place. They deal in low priced consumer goods of regular use like vegetables, fruits and toys etc. Such Retailers are - hawkers, paddlers, periodic market traders and street traders. Kisan Markets are also of this kind.



**Design 26.1** Farmers selling vegetables in Kissan Mandi

- 2. Fixed Shop Retailers :** Fixed price shop Retailers are those who carry on their business in fixed shops, where customers can easily reach and make their purchases.

There are super store in big cities which are known as departmental stores. In such store, every type of domestic goods, like ration, jewellery,

readymade garments and eatable are sold at one place. In these days many departmental stores are available in different countries.



**Design 26.2** Exterior and interior view of a super-store

### Types of retailers

**Retailers are of many categories. These categories are based on the following basis :**

1. **Size :** Some Retailers are of small size and some are very big. In big retailer shops various type of things are available.
2. **Goods based :** Some retailers sell only one item in their shops i.e. clothes, jewellery, dry fruits etc.



**Design 26.3** A view of retailers (Dry fruit and cloth shop)

3. **Price Based :** There are some shops in foreign countries which are known as dollar shops where price of every item is one dollar.
4. **Ownership basis :** Some retail shops are owned by one person, whereas other shops are owned by a group of persons as co-operative stores.



## Functions of retailers

Retailer act as middleman between the wholesalers and the consumer. On one side the Retailers buy a thing from the wholesalers and sells to the consumer. In this process he performs the following duties.

1. **Assortment of Goods** : He supply and substitute the things according to their type and size.
2. **To Provide Information** : He passes information to the consumer about availability of things, through various means i.e. Radio, TV, or by distributing leaflets in the residences.
3. **To make available in the nearby** : Retailers make the things locally available to the consumers by buying these from far away places. Thus consumers can easily get things which are available in other states.
4. **Prices** : After procuring the things retailers put stickers on them which show their price.
5. **Display Arrangement** : To enhance the sale of a thing a retailer make display arrangement out side his shop for advertisement purpose.
6. **After Sale Service** : Retailer make arrangement to convince the Purchaser to buy a thing and pass on the required information to the consumer about the post purchase service of the item, for example in case of sale of the electronic goods.
7. **To pack and display the things** : Retailer also perform the duty of packing and displaying the things according to their size and quality. It is done so, for the convenience of the purchaser.
8. **To make home-delivery** : Now a days retailer, deliver the goods at purchaser's house, which is called free home delivery. Items like Ration and electric goods like refrigerator and TV etc. are delivered at purchaser's door-step.
9. **To inform about Marketing** : The Retailers also provide useful information to the wholesalers and manufactures regarding changes in tastes, fashion and preferences of the consumer and about the competing goods as they are in direct personal touch with the customers.



Now we can judge that how a retailer plays very important role in marketing of the goods.

### Wholesale trade and traders

Wholesale trade refers to buying of goods in bulk from manufacturer or their agents and selling them to the retailer in relatively smaller quantities. Those who are engaged in wholesale trade are called wholesalers.

The wholesalers buy the goods directly from the Manufacturers or their agents. They buy goods in bulk. These goods are further supplied to the retailers. From where they buy their daily need goods like eatables, clothes, medicines and electronic goods etc.

The wholesalers generally deal in one item. They are not directly connected with the customer. Because they supply their goods to the retailer rather than the consumer. Thus the wholesaler acts as a link between the consumer on one side and retailer on the other. The wholesaler solves the problems of both the manufacturer and retailer by placing large orders with the manufacturer and by meeting the small order of the retailer.

### Functions of wholesaler

Every wholesaler is required to perform the primary functions of buying, storing and supplying goods. The various other functions of the wholesaler are :

- 1. Buying and assembling goods :** Every wholesaler buys the commodity of his trade in bulk for example grain trader buys the wheat grain in the season at cheap rate. They make the wheat available to the retailers as and when required.
- 2. Hold adequate stock :** Every wholesaler stores the goods in large scale. Thus he helps the producer as well as the Retailer.
- 3. Transportation :** The wholesaler helps in the transportation of the goods from the place of produce to the place of retailer.
- 4. Financing :** The wholesaler performs financing function by providing credit facilities to the retailers. Some times they even provide advance money to the manufacturer. Thus by doing so he helps in marketing process with his money.

5. **Selling and Promoting :** The wholesaler some times undertake the activities like advetising, personal selling and sale promotions, to increas the demand for goods for the benefit of the retailer.
6. **Risk bearing :** The wholesaler has to bear the risk of loss which may be due to the natural calamity, change in demand, price fluctuation and holding large stock of things.
7. **Marketing information :** Wholesalers keep themselves informed of the changing trends in the market. They act as two way channel between the producers and the retailers. They supply information regarding the competitor's activities, new products and price change.
8. **Grading and Packing :** The wholesalers sometimes perform grading functions for example sorting out the products according to their quality and size. After grading and packing the products on the basis of quality they supply them to the retailers.

Now you must have understood that how bazaar and market play very important role in the Marketing Process. Marketing process help people to provide employment by making proper use of Monetary investments by wholesalers and retailers.

All this process is very important for the economic development of a democratic country, where marketing process help the cunsumers to buy their daily need products in the vicinity surroundings. At the same time it help in the economic growth of the country by providing employment, thus reducing poverty. In the end, we see that access to the markets depend upon the availability of different type of things in the particular market. Market should always be nearby, so that the customers can go there at their convenience. Some people cannot buy things by cash, thus they buy things on credit. Inspite of the quality of things, genuine price nearness etc. affects people's access to the market.

#### Points to Remember

1. Market is a place, where the things of daily needs are available.
2. The seller of goods are known as salesman and the prsons who buy goods are known as consumer.

3. The place where activities of Sales & Purchases take place is known as bazaar.
4. The functions of the wholesaler is to buy goods from producer and then supply the goods to the retailer. The wholesale shopkeepers are known as whole sellers.
5. The retailers purchase the goods from the wholesalers and passes them to the consumers.



**I. Answer the following questions in 1-15 words :**

1. What do you mean by market/bazar ? What is its importance?
2. How Retail Market help to fulfill our daily needs ?
3. What do you mean by trade ?
4. Give three factors which effects people's accessibility to the market.
5. What is the significance of retail market ?
6. Between whom the retailers act as a link ?

**II. Answer the following questions in 50-60 words :-**

1. What are the functions of the wholesale market ?
2. What are the functions of a retail market ?
3. How wholesale market help to make products available to the consumer ?
4. On what basis the retailers are classified ?
5. Why the wholesaler try to keep in mind the market trends ?
6. What role middleman plays in the grain, vegetable and fruit market ?

**III. Fill in the following blanks :**

1. .... is the place where Sellers and Purchaser meet each other.
2. .... play as a link between the producer and consumer.
3. .... is related to sale and Purchase of Products.
4. Wholesaler keep a ..... on the Market trends.
5. Retailer act as ..... between the producer and consmer.
6. Where we buy wheat is known as ..... Mandi.
7. Fresh vegetables and fruits are being brought by the ..... near us.

**IV. True/False :**

1. Market is a place, where the things of daily needs are available. ☐
2. The big retailer purchase items in less number for supply to its consumer directly. ☐
3. After purchasing the goods, the wholesaler tags prices on every item. ☐

**V. Multiple Choice Questions :**

1. **What do you mean by the sellers of goods ?**
  - (1) Salesman
  - (2) Purchaser
  - (3) Customer
2. **How many types of trades are there in Indian Society ?**
  - (1) Three
  - (2) Two
  - (3) Four
3. **Who was as a middleman in Market/Bazaar ?**
  - (1) Customer
  - (2) Retailer trader
  - (3) Wholesale trader



1. Go to a nearby Retailer and make a list of 5 things and find out from where he buys these things.
2. Go to nearby Fruit or Vegetable Market and write down the activities taking place over there.

